

**МІНІСТЕРСТВО ОСВІТИ І НАУКИ УКРАЇНИ**

**Державний заклад: «Південноукраїнський національний педагогічний університет  
імені К. Д. Ушинського»**

**Мулик К.О., Алексєєва О.Б.**

## **Практичний курс англійської мови**

Навчальний посібник для студентів  
факультету початкової освіти

базовий курс

частина 1

**Одеса**

**2020**

УДК: 811.111(075.8)

---

Рекомендовано вченою радою державного закладу:  
«Південноукраїнський національний педагогічний університет  
імені К.Д. Ушинського» (протокол № 3 від 29 жовтня, 2020 р.)

**Мулик К.О., Алексєєва О.Б.**

Практичний курс англійської мови: навчальний посібник для студентів педагогічних закладів вищої освіти. Базовий курс. Частина перша. Одеса, 2020. 216 с.

**Рецензенти:** О.Ю. Карпенко - доктор філологічних наук, професор, завідувач кафедри граматики англійської мови Одеського національного університету імені І.І. Мечникова

С.Ю. Юхимець - кандидат педагогічних наук, доцент кафедри «Професійна англійська мова» Одеського національного морського університету.

Посібник ґрунтується на сучасній системі вправ, яка передбачає паралельний розвиток усіх видів мовленнєвої діяльності (аудіювання, говоріння, читання, письма) та забезпечує високий рівень знань з дисципліни «Практичний курс англійської мови».

Означений посібник є частиною навчально-методичного комплексу «Практичний курс англійської мови». Перша частина базового курсу складається з двох розділів, які включають тексти, фонетичні та лексико-граматичні завдання, ідіоматичні звороти, фразові дієслова, елементи проблемного навчання відповідно до тематики робочої програми «Практичний курс англійської мови» і готує майбутніх випускників до здійснення комунікативної іншомовної діяльності.

Видання рекомендується для студентів педагогічних закладів вищої освіти I - III років навчання.

## ЗМІСТ

Передмова.....	5
<b>Unit one. AQUAINTANCE.....</b>	<b>7</b>
<b>Lesson 1. ME AND MY FRIENDS.....</b>	<b>7</b>
<b>Phonetic.....</b>	<b>7</b>
<b>Grammar.....</b>	<b>10</b>
Артикль.....	10
Дієслова to be, to have.....	15
Займенник (особовий, присвійний, вказівний, зворотній, кількісний).....	23
Числівник.....	32
Прийменник.....	35
Іменник.....	38
Присвійний відмінок іменника.....	42
Прикметник.....	46
Ступені порівняння прикметників.....	46
<b>Speaking.....</b>	<b>53</b>
<b>Lesson 2. OUR STUDIES.....</b>	<b>59</b>
<b>Phonetic.....</b>	<b>59</b>
<b>Grammar.....</b>	<b>62</b>
Порядок слів у реченні.....	62
Види питальних речень.....	65
Часи групи Simple (Indefinite)/Часи групи Continuous.....	69
Present Simple.....	69
Past Simple.....	74
Present Continuous.....	80
Past Continuous.....	84
Verb+to/ Verb+ing.....	99

Future Simple /Future Continuous.....	103
<b>Speaking</b> .....	111
<b>Завдання, тести для самоперевірки</b> .....	119
<b>Unit two</b> .....	129
<b>L e s s o n 1. OUR UNIVERSITY</b> .....	129
<b>Phonetic</b> .....	129
Grammar.....	136
Часи групи Perfect.....	136
Present Perfect .....	136
Past Perfect .....	148
Future Perfect.....	152
Часи групи Perfect Continious.....	158
Present Perfect Continious.....	158
Past Perfect Continious .....	161
Future Perfect Continious.....	166
<b>Reading</b> .....	170
<b>Speaking</b> .....	173
<b>Завдання, тести для самоперевірки</b> .....	183
<b>Довідкові дані</b> .....	207
<b>Список джерел</b> .....	216

## ПЕРЕДМОВА

Метою навчального посібника є розвиток у студентів навичок усного та писемного мовлення і підготовка їх до подальшого читання літератури в рамках професійно-орієнтованого курсу. Засвоєння матеріалу даного курсу сприяє формуванню у студентів різних аспектів іншомовної комунікативної компетенції.

Перша частина базового курсу складається з двох розділів, які включають тексти, фонетичні та лексико-граматичні завдання відповідно до тематики програми з англійської мови для студентів немовних факультетів.

Перший розділ відповідає першому модулю НМК дисципліни «Практичний курс англійської мови». Він спрямований на коригування знань і мовних навичок, отриманих студентами у школі, містить матеріали по темам «Знайомство», «Моє резюме», «Мій робочий день», «Хобі», «Я - студент», а також вправи з елементарної граматики англійської мови.

В другому розділі студенти знайомляться з вокабуляром по темі «Університет» і отримують основні відомості про систему вищої освіти України та Великобританії.

Кожен урок містить: 1) не менше трьох текстів різного рівня складності, призначених для розвитку навичок та умінь усного мовлення, оглядового (пошукового) читання, аналітичного або переказного читання; 2) фонетичні вправи, прислів'я, скоромовки, вірші; 3) діалоги і комунікативні вправи на розвиток навичок усного мовлення; 4) лексичні вправи, спрямовані на тренування і закріплення вокабуляра теми; 5) певний граматичний матеріал, що відповідає за рівнем складності тематиці уроку.

Кожне граматичне завдання супроводжується викладанням теоретичного матеріалу, а велика кількість завдань дає можливість викладачеві варіювати побудову заняття в залежності від рівня підготовки студентів. Завдання,

призначені для самостійної роботи студентів, відзначені знаками \* або \*\* в залежності від рівня складності.

**UNIT ONE**  
**AQUAINTANCE**  
**Lesson 1**  
**Me and my friends**

**PART 1. Phonetic**

*Прочитайте назви наступних приголосних букв:*

<i>букв</i>	<b>Bb</b>	<b>Cc</b>	<b>Dd</b>	<b>Ff</b>	<b>Gg</b>	<b>Kk</b>	<b>Ll</b>	<b>M</b>	<b>Nn</b>	<b>Pp</b>	<b>Ss</b>	<b>Tt</b>	<b>Vv</b>	<b>Zz</b>
<i>а</i>								<i>m</i>						
<i>назва</i>	[bi:]	[si:]	[di:]	[ef]	[dʒ	[ke	[el]	[e	[en	[pi:]	[es]	[ti:]	[vi	[zed]
<i>а</i>	] ] ]	] ] ]	] ] ]	] ] ]	i:] i:]	] ] ]	] ] ]	m] ] ]	] ] ]	] ] ]	] ] ]	] ] ]	:] ] ]	] ] ]
<i>читання</i>	[b]	[k, s]	[d]	[f]	[dʒ, g]	[k]	[l]	[m]	[n]	[p]	[s, z]	[t]	[v]	[z]

**Основні правила читання голосних**

1. Голосні букви під наголосом читаються по-різному в залежності від типу складу і поєднання голосних і приголосних букв у слові.

2. Англійські голосні поділяються на довгі і короткі. Довгота голосних в українській мові не впливає на зміст слова, тоді як в англійській мові це має дуже велике значення: залежно від довготи або стислості голосного звуку змінюється значення слова.

У фонетичної транскрипції довгота голосного позначається [:].

3. В англійській мові розрізняють два типи *наголошених* складів **відкритий** (закінчується на голосну - **I тип**) та **закритий** (закінчується на приголосну - **II тип**):

У закритому складі голосна буква читається як *короткий* голосний звук.

Буква	Алфавітна назва	I тип читання	II тип читання	Ненаголошени й склад	На початку слова
Aa	[ei]	[ei] name	[æ] man, bad	[ə] a pen	
Ee	[i:]	[i:] me, eve	[e] red, ten		
Ii	[ai]	[ai] I, fine, time	[i] big, sit		
Oo	[əv]	[əv] nose, no	[ɒ] not, box		
Uu	[ju:]	[ju:] tune	[ʌ] cup, bus		
Yy	[wai]	[ai] my	[i] symbol	[i] lady, Daddy	[j]

***1. Read the following words and write their transcription:***

Буква **Aa** в першому і в другому типах читання:

lake, cake, name, man, land, fat, cat, fame, plan, cap, rat, hate, map

Буква **Ee** в першому і в другому типах читання:

be, Pete, me, men, ten, bed, pen, best, eve, let, left, end, desk, tell

Букви **Ii** и **Yy** в першому і в другому типах читання:

like, fine, bit, pill, lye, tip, tyke, tide, bye, style, system, mystic

Буква **Yy** на початку слів читається як звук [j], а в кінці двоскладових і багатоскладових слів у ненаголошеному положенні як звук [i]:

yet, yes, yak, yell, yoke, yelp

lady, silly, fancy, fifty, ninety, ready

Буква **Oo** в першому і в другому типах читання:

no, slope, stone, go, on, clock, vote, note, smoke



Буква **Uu** в першому і в другому типах читання:

cut, mud, such, dust, use, fuse, dune, tune, tube, fume, fun, hue, due.

Буквосполучення **ee, ea** читаються як довгий звук [i:]

meat, sleep, keep, see, pea, feel, neat.

Буквосполучення **ai, au** читаються як звук [ei]

rain, say, sail, aim, may, lay, lain.

Голосні **i, o** перед nd, ld читаються відповідно до свого алфавітного читання.

kind, mild, find, old, cold, bold, gold, mind.

Подвійні приголосні в англійській мові передають один звук:

till, mass, ness, bell, mill, tell, sell, ass, add, lass.

Буква **C** передає звук [s], якщо знаходиться перед голосними e, i, y. У всіх інших випадках буква c передає звук [k]:

place, city, pencil, icy, center, can, cut, cab, cube, came, cave, club, music, stick, back, black, clock, deck, face.

## ***2. Read the following words:***

[i:] – me, be, meet, Pete, Eve

[i:] – meet, need, deed, sea, deep

[e] – pen, men, Ted, ten, pet, bed

[k] – can, clock, stick, black

[ai] – my, tie, pile, side, bye

[ai] – kind, mild, find

**3. Divide the words upon the type of syllable.**

cut – myth - tide – mix – box – lake – fly - plate – map – his – cat – dog – blue – site  
 – meet – he – sit – rose – home – stop – fond – game – plan – tram – my – ill –  
 system – tent – fell – feel – fine – we – but – fun – use – tune

**4. Read the following words and write their transcription:**

a) Type, tin, fine, pin, lip, pile, line, sit, fit, set, best, sin, miss, pens, less, lends, Bess, seems, size, zest, sen, dam , Ann, man , men, main, may, name.

b) man - flat      tan – ten    pain- pay    pen – pane  
       map - bad      pan – pen    name - may let – late  
       lamp -plan     bad – bed    date –day    met – mate

**5. Read the following words and write their transcription:**

a) pale, date, ban, tape, fate, mad, say, same, fat, day, Sam, lane, land, tame, Spain, faint, aim, leave, bede, beat, deed, lean, mean, seat, nice;

b) line, pin, pine, dene, fine, man, dent, Ann, nine, same, Sam, bet, bed, dine, did, May, fit, style, vet, bay, sat, tilt, file, faint, ease, pet, tin, veal, slip, stay.

**6. Read the following words and write their transcription:**

fame, plan, tyke, mill, tell, sell, tide, bye, style meat, sleep, may, lay, lain, fancy, fifty, ninety, ready, keep men, ten, bed, pen, mild, find, old, cold, best, cap, rat, hate, map, gob, glide, clock, cycle, bye, little.

**PART 2. Grammar**

**I. Артикль** - це частина мови, яка уточнює значення іменника, але власного значення не має і на українську мову не перекладається. Існує три артикля: **означений, неозначений і нульовий**.

**Неозначений артикль** має форму **a** перед іменниками, що починаються з приголосної: *a plate*, і форму **an** перед іменниками, що починаються з голосної: *an apple*. Неозначений артикль вживається тільки з обчислювальними іменниками в однині. Він представляє предмет як один з

класу йому подібних: *This is a pen*. Неозначений артикль вживається якщо предмет згадується в розмові або оповіданні вперше, з іменниками, що не мають визначення, чи мають визначення описового характеру: *Yesterday I met a beautiful girl in the club*.

Неозначений артикль використовується:

1. З назвами професій: *I am a student*.
2. З виразами кількості: *a few, a little, a dozen, a pair, a lot of*.
3. В окличних реченнях з обчислювальними іменниками: *What a lovely day! What a shame!*
4. Якщо перед іменником стоїть прикметник, то неозначений артикль ставиться перед прикметником: *a big table, a good friend*.

**Означений** артикль *the* вимовляється як [ði:] перед словом, що починається з голосної, і як [ðe] перед словом, що починається з приголосної. Означений артикль вживається перед будь-яким загальним іменником в однині або множині, якщо він вже відомий співрозмовнику: *She has a house. The house is nice*.

Означений артикль використовується:

1. Якщо предмет єдиний в своєму роді: *The Sun, the Moon, the Queen, the President*.
2. Перед прикметниками в найвищому ступені і кількісними числівниками: *He is the richest man in the world. She lives on the third floor*.

**Нульовий** артикль вживається перед необчислювальними іменниками, що позначають речовину або абстрактне поняття: *There is milk in the cup. She looked at her child with kindness and love*.

Нульовий артикль використовується:

1. Перед обчислювальними іменниками у множині, про яких співрозмовнику невідомо: *There were boys and girls in the classroom*.
2. В окличних реченнях з необчислювальними іменниками: *What nasty weather!*

3. Для позначення часу прийняття їжі: *I always have coffee for breakfast.*

4. Спосіб пересування: *by car, by bus, on foot.*

5. У ряді стійких сполучень:

*at home, in / to bed, at / to work, at / to school, at peace, at war, by chance, by heart, by mistake, by means of, on time.*

6. З вказівними, присвійними займенниками та числівниками: *his mother, two children.*

7. З назвами днів тижня, місяців.

З власними іменами може вживатися або нульовий, або означений артикль в залежності від значення іменника.

Означений артикль	Нульовий артикль
1. Назви сторін світу, океанів, морів, річок, проливів та кораблів: <i>the Pacific Ocean, the North, the Baltic Sea, The English Channel, the Ontario, the Titanic.</i>	З назвами заливів: <i>Hudson Bay.</i> Зі словом «озеро» <i>Lake Ontario</i>
2. Назви горних масивів, груп островів, пустель: <i>The Carpathians, the British Isles, the Sahara.</i>	З назвами островів, горних вершин: <i>Cuba, Elbrus.</i>
3. Назви міських установ (театрів, музеїв, готелів, банків): <i>the Hermitage, the Savoy, the Opera Theatre.</i>	З назвами аеропортів, вокзалів, вулиць, парків, площ: <i>Oxford Street, Central Park, Trafalgar Square, London Airport, Victoria Station.</i>
4. Назви міських організацій: <i>the Supreme Court</i>	З назвами авіаліній, компаній: <i>Fiat Sony Kodak British Airways IBM</i>
5. Назви англомовних газет: <i>the Times</i>	Назви англомовних журналів: <i>I bought Cosmopolitan yesterday.</i>

6. Зі складними назвами країн та географічними назвами у множині: <i>the United states of America, the Philippines,</i>	З назвами міст, континентів, країн штатів, регіонів: <i>Paris, Australia, France, Texas, Tuscany.</i>
7. У словосполученнях з прийменником of: <i>the University of London.</i>	Словосполучення з назвами міста: <i>London University London Zoo</i>
8. З прізвищами людей у множині: <i>the Johnsons.</i>	З прізвищами людей, титулами, рангами, словами, що означають сімейні відносини та соціальний статус: <i>John. Doctor Brown, Miss Smith, Aunt Polly, Captain White, professor Higgins.</i>

**1.1 Complete the sentences with the articles *a, an, the* where necessary.**

1. Could you turn on \_\_\_ television, please?
2. It's \_\_\_ best film I have seen for ages.
3. Could I borrow \_\_\_ piece of paper to make notes on?
4. Is that \_\_\_ new carpet you were telling me about?
5. We're going to \_\_\_ Kenya at Christmas.
6. Would you like to see \_\_\_ photos I took on holiday?
7. They tell me that \_\_\_ honesty is the best policy.
8. She said that \_\_\_ carrots were her favourite vegetable.
9. Sometimes I wish \_\_\_ telephone had never been invented.
10. Look at \_\_\_ sea. Isn't it beautiful?

**1.2 Complete the sentences with the articles *a, an, the* where necessary.**

1. \_\_\_ tennis is my favourite sport. I play once or twice \_\_\_ week if I can, but I'm not \_\_\_ very good player.

2. I won't be home for \_\_\_ dinner this evening. I'm meeting some friends after \_\_\_ work and we're going to \_\_\_ cinema.
3. There was \_\_\_ accident as I was going \_\_\_ home last night.
4. A: What's \_\_\_ name of \_\_\_ hotel where you're staying? B: \_\_\_ Imperial. It's in \_\_\_ Queen Street in \_\_\_ city centre. It's near \_\_\_ station.
5. I've got two brothers. \_\_\_ older one is training to be \_\_\_ pilot with \_\_\_ British Airways. \_\_\_ younger one is still at \_\_\_ school. When he leaves \_\_\_ school, he hopes to go to \_\_\_ university to study \_\_\_ Law.

**1.3 Find 6 mistakes of using the articles (a/an or the) and correct them.**

1. Sun rises in the east and sets in the west.
2. That's the car I mentioned before.
3. Put those plates in a washing-up bowl, will you.
4. He's most arrogant man I have ever met.
5. I'd like a glass of wine and a few olives, please.
6. The weather has been marvelous recently.
7. Money has been the cause of a lot of our problems.
8. Australia was everything I imagined it would be.
9. Would you mind if I took car to work today?
10. We're thinking of going to cinema tonight.
11. Are you going to take dog for a walk?
12. Let's go for a drive in country.

**\*1.4 Fill in the articles (a, an, the) where necessary.**

1. This is ... camera. 2. This is ... David. 3. I'd like to change ... money. 4. ... Martin is from ... Italy. 5. This is ... cinema. ... cinema is new. 6. I'd like to buy ... orange. 7. I am ... student. My brothers are ... farmers. 8. I want to buy ... this stamp. 9. This is my ... Smartphone. 10. ... Smiths live in ... London. 11. These are ... students of our group. 12. ...man entered the room. 13. She has ... aunt and two ... uncles. 14. Would you like ...cup of tea? – Yes, I usually drink ... tea in the morning.

**1.5 Complete the sentences with the article *the* where necessary.**

1. I was ill, so I went to see ... doctor. 2. ... President is the most powerful person in ... United States. 3. ... President Kennedy was assassinated in 1963. 4. Do you know ... Wilsons? They're a very nice couple. 5. Do you know Professor ... Brown's phone number?

**1.6 Some sentences have the missing article *the*. Correct the sentence if it's necessary or mark it as "right".**

1. Everest was first climbed in 1953. 2. Milan is in north of Italy. 3. Africa is much larger than Europe. 4. Last year I visited Mexico and United States. 5. South of England is warmer than north. 6. Portugal is in western Europe. 7. France and Britain are separated by English Channel. 8. Jim has travelled a lot in Middle East. 9. Chicago is on Lake Michigan. 10. The highest mountain in Africa is Kilimanjaro (5,895 metres)...

**1.7. Choose the correct form.**

1. Have you ever been to British Museum / the British Museum, (the... *is correct*)
2. Hyde Park / The Hyde Park is a very large park in central London.
3. Another park in central London is St James's Park / the St James's Park.
4. Grand Hotel / The Grand Hotel is in Baker Street / the Baker Street.
5. We flew to New York from Gatwick Airport / the Gatwick Airport near London.
6. Frank is a student at Liverpool University / the Liverpool University.
7. If you're looking for a good clothes shop, I would recommend Harrison's / the Harrison's.
8. If you're looking for a good pub, I would recommend Ship Inn / the Ship Inn.
9. Statue of Liberty / The Statue of Liberty is at the entrance to New York harbour / the New York harbour.
10. You should go to Science Museum / the Science Museum. It's very interesting.

**II. Дієслова TO BE /THE VERB TO HAVE (HAVE GOT)**

Дієслово **to be** - бути, існувати, перебувати має такі форми:

	Теперішній час Present Simple			Минулий час Past Simple			Майбутній час Future Simple	
	однин а	множин а		однин а	множин а		однин а	множин а
1 особ а	I am/ I'm	We are	1 особ а	I was	We were	1 особ а	I shall (will) be/ I'll	We shall (will) be
2 особ а	You are	You are	2 особ а	You were	You were	2 особ а	You will be	You will be
3 особ а	He / She / It is /He's	They are/ They're	3 особ а	He / She / It was	They were	3 особ а	He / She / It will be	They will be

Для утворення негативної форми необхідно поставити **негативну частку not** після дієслова to be:

*I am not happy.* - Я не щасливий.

*The books were not interesting.* - Книги не були цікаві.

*He is not our teacher.* - Він не наш учитель.

*She will not be his wife.* - Вона не буде його дружиною.

Утворення скороченої форми:

*is not = isn't*

*are not = aren't*

*was not = wasn't*

*were not = weren't*

*will not = won't*



Дієслово **to be** не вимагає допоміжного дієслова для утворення питальній або негативної форми. Щоб задати питання потрібно поставити дієслово **to be** перед підметом:

*Am I happy? - Yes, you are. - Я щасливий?*

*Was the book interesting? - Yes, it was. - Книга була цікава*

*Will he be our teacher? - No, he will not. - Він буде нашим учителем?*

### **2.1 Give the short answers. Pay attention to the verb “to be”.**

*Model: Are you from Odessa? → Yes, I am. / No, I am not.*

1. Are you a student of the Pedagogical University?
2. Is your girl-friend seventeen?
3. Is your boy-friend a student of Philology?
4. Are your parents from Odessa?
5. Are they teachers?
6. Is a lawyer a well-paid job?
7. Is this book a dictionary?
8. Is your pet clever?
9. Are your group-mates good friends?
10. Are you good at English?
11. Were you at home yesterday evening?
12. Was your friend in the library the day before yesterday?
13. Were your group-mates in the University on Sunday?
14. Were they late for classes on Monday?
15. Was the weather fine last week?
16. Was the home task in English difficult?
17. Will you be at the University tomorrow?
18. Will you be a student in five years?
19. Will the lesson be over at 6 o'clock?
20. Will the English language be popular in the future?

### **\* 2.2 Fill in the blanks with the necessary form of the verb “to be”.**

1. I ... in the library yesterday.
2. Where ... they from?
3. We ... in the south of Odessa region last year.
4. My friends ... in the north of Ukraine now.
5. ... this kind of transport good?
6. Ann ... a good teacher in the future.
7. It ... the way to my house.
8. They ... real friends in the past.
9. There ... a traffic jam yesterday.
10. It ... warm next week.
11. ... your sister a student too?
12. Kate ... here in two days.
13. Ann ... good at English.
14. My brother and I ... at home.

**\*\* 2.3 Find one mistake in each sentence.**

1. Is the days lovely? 2. Yes, my children aren't in the bar. 3. The cinema is in Wrihten Square? 4. I is not in the bank. 5. The taxi aren't near the theatre. 6. Where the hotel? 7. What is your names? 8. The town aren't in the north of France. 9. I am not a student, I a doctor. 10. Where will he from?

**2.4 Put in am/is/are/was/were. Some sentences are present and some are past.**

1. Last year their son \_\_\_ 26, so he \_\_\_\_ 27 now.
2. Today the weather nice, but yesterday it cold.
3. I cold. Can I have something hot to drink?
4. I hungry last night, so I had something to eat.
5. Where you at 10 o'clock last Sunday morning?
6. Don't buy those shoes. They too expensive.
7. Why you so tired yesterday?
8. We must go now. It very late.
9. This time last year I in England.
10. We tired when we arrived home, so we went to bed.
11. Anton Chekhov died in 1904. He a famous Ukrainian writer.
12. "Where the dogs?" - "I don't know. They in the garden ten minutes ago."

**2.5 Translate into English:**

1. Я студент. 2. Він учень. 3. Вона вчитель. 4. Ми студенти. 5. Ви доктори. 6. Ти студент. 7. Вони учні. 8. Я вдома. 9. Він у школі. 10. Вона в кіно? 11. Ми в парку. 12. Вони в театрі? 13. Она молода? 14. Він старий. 15. Вона не стара. 16. Вони сильні. 17. Вона хвора. 18. Ви хворі? 19. Він хворий? 20. Я не хворий. 21. Я був хворий вчора. 22. Вона не була хвора. 23. Ми були в кіно. 24. Вони не були в кіно. 25. Вони не в школі. 26. Вони вдома. 27. Ви були в парку вчора? 28. Він був в школі вчора? 29. Він був батьком. 30. Вона була вчителькою.

**2.6 Put in to be in Present, Past or Future Simple.**

1, My father ... a teacher. 2. He ... a pupil twenty years ago. 3.1... a doctor when I grow up. 4. My sister ... not ... at home tomorrow. 5. She ... at school tomorrow. 6. ... you ... at home tomorrow? 7,... your father at work yesterday? 8. My sister ... ill last week. 9. She ... not ill now. 10. Yesterday we... at the theatre. 11. Where ... your mother now? — She ... in the kitchen. 12. Where ... you yesterday? — I ... at the cinema. 13. When I come home tomorrow, all my family ... at home. 14. ... your little sister in bed now? — Yes, she ... 15. ... you... at school tomorrow? — No, I ...

### THE VERB TO HAVE (HAVE GOT)

Дієслово **to have** – володіти, мати. Часто в розмовній мові замість **to have** вживається словосполучення **to have got** з тим же значенням, особливо коли мова йде про тимчасове володіння або про тільки що придбаний предмет або предмети.

	Теперішній час Present Simple			Минулий час Past Simple			Майбутній час Future Simple	
	однин a	множин a		однин a	множин a		однин a	множин a
1 особ a	I have (got)/ I've got	We have	1 особ a	I had	We had	1 особ a	I shall (will) have / <i>I'll</i> <i>have</i>	We shall (will) have
2 особ a	You have	You have	2 особ a	You had	You had	2 особ a	You will have	You will have
3 особ a	He / She / It	They have / They've	3 особ a	He / She / It had	They had	3 особ a	He / She / It	They will have

	has (got) /He's got						will have	
--	------------------------------	--	--	--	--	--	--------------	--

*We have breakfast at 7 o'clock in the morning. - Ми снідаємо о 7 годині ранку.*

*She has English lessons every day. - У неї уроки англійської кожен день.*

*They had a splendid holiday last year. - У них була прекрасна відпустка в минулому році.*

*You will have a new flat next month. - У вас буде нова квартира в наступному місяці.*

*We've got a nice flat. - У нас хороша квартира.*

*Have you got any pets? - У вас є домашні тварини?*

Для утворення **негативної** форми необхідно поставити **негативну частку not** або негативний займенник **no** після дієслова **to have**: *has not = hasn't ; have not = haven't*

*She has not (hasn't) got any problems. - У неї немає ніяких проблем.*

*I have got no pen here. - У мене немає ручки.*

У сучасній англійській мові **питальна** та **негативна** форми дієслова **to have** утворюються як за допомогою допоміжного дієслова **do** (*does* - в теперішньому часі; *did* в минулому часі) так і без допоміжного дієслова (частіше у розмові):

*Do you have a sister? / Have you got a sister? - У тебе є сестра?*

*Does he have any children? / Has he got any children? - У нього є діти?*

*We did not have money. / We haven't money. - У нас не було грошей.*

### **Треба запам'ятати :**

- to have dinner /breakfast - обідати, снідати

- to have tea/coffee, etc. - пити чай, каву і т.ін.

- to have a bath/a shower - прийняти ванну, душ
- to have a shave/a wash - поголитися, помитися
- to have a rest/a sleep/a dream, etc. – відпочити, поспати, помріяти і т.ін.
- to have a holiday/a good time, etc. – відпочити, добре провести час і т.ін.
- to have a walk - гуляти
- to have a toothache – відчувати зубний біль

**2.7 Fill in the blanks with the necessary form of the verb “to have” (have, has, had, will have, haven’t, hasn’t).**

1. They ... dinner together every Sunday. 2. We ... much free time tomorrow morning. 3. He ... got a brother, he ... got two younger sisters. 4. We ... little work to do yesterday evening. 5. ... she got a credit card? Yes, she ... . 6. Did you ... a rest yesterday? Yes, I ... a good rest. 7. ... you got a pet at home? – No, I ... . 8. She ... a nice dress on. 9. I’m sure he ... a good mark in History next term.

**2.8 Translate the sentences.**

The students had five lectures last week. 2. Anna has holidays in summer. 3. My grandmother had a lot of apples last autumn. 4. Ann and Mary have the same hobbies. 5. We have a lot of snow in winter. 6. Our library has many books and journals. 7. Elsa had a Ford last year. 8. John had two exams yesterday.

**2.9. Write questions:**

*Example:* (you/a bicycle?) Have you got a bicycle? What kind of bicycle have you got?

1. Carol / many friends?
2. Mr and Mrs Lewis/any children?
3. how much money/you?
4. what kind of car/John?
5. Alice/a camera?
6. he /a lot of friends?
7. she /a headache in the evening?
8. they \ free time?

9. we \ a lot of books?

10. my cousin \ good marks at school ?

**2.10 Put in have got ('ve got), has got ('s got), haven't got or hasn't got.**

1. They like flowers. They've got a lot of roses in their garden.

2. Jane hasn't got a car. She goes everywhere by bicycle.

3. Everybody likes Tom. He \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of friends.

4. Mr and Mrs Eastwood \_\_\_\_\_ two children, a boy and a girl.

5. This insect \_\_\_\_\_ six legs.

6. I can't open the door. I \_\_\_\_\_ a key.

7. Quick! Hurry! We \_\_\_\_\_ much time.

8. "What's wrong?" - "I \_\_\_\_\_ something in my eye".

9. Ben doesn't read much. He \_\_\_\_\_ many books.

10. It's a nice town. It \_\_\_\_\_ a very nice shopping centre.

11. Mother is going to the dentist. She \_\_\_\_\_ a toothache.

12. "Where's my newspaper?" - "I don't know. I \_\_\_\_\_ it."

13. Julia wants to go on holiday but she \_\_\_\_\_ any money.

14. I'm not going to work today. I \_\_\_\_\_ a bad cold.

**2.11 Put the sentences into negative and interrogative form.**

1. Anna has a new coat.

2. We will have holidays soon.

3. Nick has got a scooter.

4. They had an old garden.

5. Mary had red roses in her garden.

6. The hunter has got a dog.

7. The child will have new toys.

8. You have two apple-trees in the garden.

**III. Займенники / PRONOUNS**

**Займенник** — це повнозначна частина мови, слова якої не називають, а лише вказують на предмети, їхні ознаки та властивості або кількість. Займенники набувають конкретного лексичного значення лише в тексті, коли їх співвідносять з певними іменниками, прикметниками та числівниками. Займенники, подібно до цих частин мови, відповідають на питання *хто? що? який? чий? котрий? скільки?* Займенники поділяються за своїм значенням на: **особові** (*I, you, he, she, it, we, they*); **присвійні** (*my, your, his, her, its, our, their*); **зворотні** (*myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves*); **вказівні** (*this, that, these, those, such*); **питальні та відносні** (*who, whom, whose, what, which*); **неозначені** (*some, any, no*); **кількісні** (*much, many, little, few*); **означальні** (*all, another, both, each, every, either, neither, other*).

Однина				
Особові (хто?)	Об'єктні (кого, кому, ким?)	Присвійні (чий?)		Зворотні (- сь, -ся)
		Залежна форма (перед іменником)	Самостійна форма (без іменника)	
І я	me мене, мені	my мій, моя, моє, мої	mine мій, моя, моє, мої	myself себе, я сам
you ти	you тебе, тобі	your твій, твоя, твоє, твої	yours твій, твоя, твоє, твої	yourself себе, ти сам
he він	him його, нього, йому, ньому	his його	his його	himself себе, він сам

she вона	her її, їй	her її	hers її	herself себе, вона сама
it воно	it його, нього, йому, ньому	its його	its (не використовується)	itself себе, воно саме
Множина				
we ми	us нас, нам	our наш, наша, наше, наші	ours наш, наша, наше, наші	ourselves себе, ми самі
you ви	you вас, вам	your ваш, ваша, ваше, ваші	yours ваш, ваша, ваше, ваші	yourselves себе, ви самі
they вони	them їх, їм	their їхній, їхня, їхнє, їхні	theirs їхній, їхня, їхнє, їхні	themselves себе, вони самі

Займенник «I» завжди пишеться з великої літери. Займенники «**he / she**» вживаються щодо живих предметів; «**it**» - щодо неживих предметів, абстрактних понять і тварин.

*He is a student of the university. It is in the centre of the city. Show him right away.*  
- Він студент університету. Воно (це) знаходиться в центрі міста. Покажи йому дорогу.

### **Вказівні займенники (Demonstrative pronouns).**

**this** - цей, ця, це    **these** - ці

**that** - той, та, то    **those** - ті

*This is my father. And that is my uncle.* - Це мій батько. А то - мій дядько.



*I do not like these apples. - Мені не подобаються ці яблука.*

У реченні вказівні займенники можуть виконувати функції:

- Означення ***This bag is big.*** Ця сумка велика (Сумка –яка? – велика)

- Підмета ***This is a big bag.*** Це велика сумка.( Що це (є) ? – Сумка)

### **Indefinite pronouns some, any, no та їх похідні. Зворот There is, there are.**

1. Неозначені займенники поділяються на прості і складні. **Простими неозначеними займенниками є:** *all, each, some, any, another, other, much, many, little, few, both, one.*

2. **Складні неозначені займенники** утворюються від простих займенників *some, any, no, every* додаванням до них слів *-body, -one, -thing (somebody, anybody, nobody, everybody, someone, anyone, everyone, something, anything, nothing, everything).*

3. **Some** і похідні від нього займенники вживаються у стверджувальних реченнях, **any** і його похідні вживаються у питальних і заперечних реченнях.

<b>some</b> — якийсь, дехто	<b>somebody</b> / <b>someone</b> — хтось	<b>something</b> — щось	<b>somewhere</b> — десь, кудись
<b>any</b> — який-небудь, якийсь	<b>anybody / anyone</b> — хтось, хто-небудь	<b>anything</b> — щось	<b>anywhere</b> — де-небудь, куди-небудь
<b>no</b> — ніякий	<b>nobody / no one</b> — ніхто	<b>nothing</b> — ніщо, нічого	<b>nowhere</b> — ніде, нікуди
<b>every</b> — кожний	<b>everybody</b> / <b>everyone</b> — кожний, усі	<b>everything</b> — усе	<b>everywhere</b> — всюди, скрізь

4. Займенник **some** перед обчислюваними іменниками у множині означає кілька, деякі, одні, інші:

*We have some English books. — У нас є кілька книжок англійською мовою.*

*He asked some questions. — Він поставив кілька запитань.*

5. Перед обчислюваними іменниками в однині **some** означає якийсь, який-небудь:

*I read it in some book. — Я прочитав це в якійсь книжці.*

6. Перед необчислюваними іменниками **some** означає деяка кількість і українською мовою не перекладається:

*He bought some butter. — Він купив масла.*

7. Займенники **some, somebody, something** вживаються у спеціальних та загальних запитаннях, що виражають пропозицію або прохання:

*Would you like some tea? — Ти хочеш чаю?*

8. Займенники **any, anybody, anyone, anything** вживаються у стверджувальних реченнях у значенні усякий, будь-хто.

*Anybody can do it. — Усякий може це зробити.*

9. Після займенників **somebody, anybody, something, anything, nobody** прийменник **of** не вживається. Замість цього використовується **some of, any of, none of**.

*Some of our students played football last week. — Деякі з наших студентів грали у футбол минулого тижня.*

*Have you got any of his letters? — Ви отримали які-небудь з його листів?*

*None of them knew about it. — Ніхто з них не знав про це.*

Зворотом **there is / are** починаються речення, що повідомляють про наявність чи існування (або відсутність) в певному місці або відрізку часу особи або предмета (осіб, предметів). Речення починають оборотом **there is** (для однини) / **there are** (для множини), за яким слідує іменник-підмет, що позначає назву цього предмета або особи (зі словами, які відносяться до нього). Далі йде обставина місця або часу.

Стверджувальні речення	Питальні речення	Заперечні речення
------------------------	------------------	-------------------

There are some books there. — Там є книжки.	Are there any books there? — Там є книжки?	There aren't any books there. / There are no books there. — Там немає книжок.
There is someone in the room. — У кімнаті є хтось.	Is there anyone in the room? — Є хтось у кімнаті?	There isn't anyone in the room. / There is no one in the room. — У кімнаті нікого немає.
She gave me something to read. — Вона дала мені щось почитати.	Did she give me anything to read? — Вона давала мені щось почитати?	She didn't give me anything to read. / She gave me nothing to read. — Вона нічого не дала мені почитати.

## Займенники

many/much,

## (a) few/(a) little

Зі злічуваними іменниками	З незлічуваними іменниками	Примітки
<b>many</b>	<b>much</b>	
<i>У значенні «багато» в заперечних і запитальних реченнях</i>		
There aren't <b>many</b> flights to Calcutta. Has your son got <b>many</b> friends at school?	I haven't <b>much</b> work to do. Is there <b>much</b> money in the bank?	В стверджувальних реченнях <b>much/many</b> вживається зі словом <i>too, very, so, as</i> . чи замінюється словами <i>a lot/lots of, plenty of</i> .

		<i>You spent too much time on your homework. I met lots of interesting people on this trip.</i>
<i>В значенні «багато, значна частина»</i>		
<b>Many</b> of the students work in summer.	<b>Much</b> of what you said is true.	
<b>a few</b>	<b>a little</b>	
<i>«Небагато, декілька»</i>		
The police asked him a few questions.	I'd like a little time to think about your offer.	
<b>few</b>	<b>little</b>	
<i>«Мало»</i>		
I have <b>few</b> opportunities to practice my English.	We worked on it all day but made <b>little</b> progress.	<b>Few</b> and <b>little</b> часто замінюються ловами <b>not many</b> і <b>not much</b> There are <b>few</b> Spanish books in the bookstore. = There <b>aren't many</b> Spanish books in the bookstore. I have <b>little</b> time. = I <b>haven't</b> got <b>much</b> time.

### 3.1 Use the objective form of the pronoun.

1. Will you give (I) your pen, please! 2. Don't tell (we) this story again. 3. I'll be glad to show (you) around my house. 4. What a pretty little girl! Look at (she)! 5.

Can you explain (he) the problem? 6. If you need a dictionary, take (it)! 7. Read the new words and classify (they) into 2 groups: verbs and nouns.

**\*3.2 Fill in the gaps with necessary possessive pronouns.**

1. This is my elder sister, ...name is Julia. 2. Ted is 17, ... dream is to become an economist. 3. Is it Mary's cell phone? – Yes, it's ... 4. The Browns are my neighbours, ... house is across the street from .... 5. Bob, what is ... pet's name? – Rex. 6. Whose exercise-book is it? Is it ..., Ann? 7. We are going to the concert. These are ... tickets. 8. Don't take these seats, they are ... .

**3.3 Use correctly:**

a) **this** or **these**: ... prize, ... credit-tests, ... lecture, ... town, ... shoes, ... hair, ... students, ... men, ... news, ... houses.

b) **that** or **those**: ... photo, ... children, ... shelves, ... library, ... apples, ... bags, ... building, ... women, ... brothers-in-law.

**3.4 Complete the sentences using possessive pronouns (my, your, his, her, our, their).**

1. I left ... car in the garage.
2. Mary hung ... coat on the peg.
3. Jack had ... hair cut.
4. Neil and David ate ... supper.
5. I hope you enjoy ... holiday.
6. We'll invite you to ... house.
7. You must make up ... own mind.
8. The children had to cook ... own supper.
9. Bill borrowed Jenny's car ... own car was being repaired.
10. I'll bring ... own sheets and towels.
11. Every dog had ... own special basket to sleep in.
12. You should do ... own washing up.

**3.5 Put some, any or no.**

1. He does his homework without ... difficulty.

2. This year all the apples are red; we are going out this morning to pick ...
3. I'd like ... water, please.
4. There weren't ... tomatoes left.
5. I won't go with you. I have ... free time.
6. There aren't ... students at the moment.
7. Sorry, I have ... matches.
8. Do you have ... money?
9. The box was empty. There were ... apples in it.
10. Pour me ... milk, please.

### ***3.6 Put something, anything, nothing/ somebody, anybody, nobody***

1. Your pupils didn't know ... about the competition.
2. Was there ... in the club?
3. Did she put ... into her bag?
4. There was ... in our garage last night.
5. Has John seen ... else there?
6. Elisabeth has no English magazines. She needs to read ... in English.
7. John didn't tell them ... about his parents and their problems.
8. They saw that Robert took ... bag and ran away.
9. Jane never eats ... in the evening.
10. ... is going to visit your wife in the afternoon.
11. Sarah never goes by train ...
12. Jack told us he was going to swim ... in the evening.

### ***3.7 Choose the correct form of the pronouns in brackets.***

1. It may be (our, ours) dictionaries. 2. He has not read a line of (your, yours). How can he criticize (your, yours) poems? 3. His composition is much more interesting than (your, yours) or (my, mine). 4. (Their, theirs) knowledge of the subject is not much superior to (our, ours). 5. I'm afraid they will take (her, hers) advice not (your, yours). 6. All (our, ours) clothes were extremely dirty, and (my, mine) especially so.

7. Will you help me to sort out the things? I cannot tell which are (your, yours) and which are (my, mine). 8. This is (your, yours) note-book, but where is (my, mine)?

### **3.8 Insert a reflexive pronoun where necessary.**

1. He shaves every other day. 2. Go and wash \_\_\_\_\_. 3. She washed \_\_\_\_\_ quickly and went to prepare breakfast. 4. He likes his wife to dress \_\_\_\_\_ well. 5. Behave \_\_\_\_\_ good! 6. You can't behave \_\_\_\_\_ badly 7. The child fell and hurt \_\_\_\_\_ badly. 8. The book was ever so interesting that I could not tear \_\_\_\_\_ from it. 9. Be careful with the knife, you may cut \_\_\_\_\_. 10. He thinks too much of \_\_\_\_\_. 11. I am sure they will succeed in the aim they've put before \_\_\_\_\_. 12. We found \_\_\_\_\_ in a hotel. 13. She looked in the mirror and could not recognize \_\_\_\_\_.

### **3.9 Translate into English.**

Ці речення, ті речення, ця сумка, ці троянди, ті квіти, цей текст, той текст, ці слова, ці дерева, цю адресу, ту адресу, ці сірники, ті сірники, ці дахи, ті дахи, ці слова, ті краватки, ті кімнати, ці підручники, ті підручники.

### **3.10 Translate into English.**

Багато зошитів, багато молока, багато води, багато днів, багато газет, багато крейди, багато снігу, багато років, багато картин, багато музики, багато хлопчиків, багато дівчат, багато чаю, багато лимонів, багато м'яса, багато кімнат, багато вчителів, багато роботи, багато повітря, багато птахів, багато машин.

### **3.11 Translate into English.**

Мало будинків, мало чаю, мало чашок, мало яблук, мало вікон, мало паперу, мало кави, мало статей, мало радості, мало супу, мало дерев, мало трави, мало дітей, мало іграшок, мало світла, мало парт, мало ковбаси, мало соку, мало книг, мало квітів, мало солі, мало друзів, мало палаців.

### **3.12 Put little or few.**

1. I have ... time, so I can't go with you. 2. He has ... English books. 3. There is ... ink in my pen. Have you got any ink? 4. There are ... bears in the zoo. 5. Tom Canty was the son of poor parents and had very ... clothes. 6. There is too ... soup in my

plate. Give me some more, please. 7. The children returned from the wood very sad because they had found very ... mushrooms. 8. There was too ... light in the room, and I could not read. There are very ... people who don't know that the earth is round.

### **3.13 Put much or many.**

1. Please don't put ... pepper on the meat. 2. There were ... plates on the table. 3. I never eat ... bread with soup. 4. Why did you eat so ... ice-cream? 5. She wrote us ... letters from the country. 6. ... of these students don't like to look up words in the dictionary. 7. ... in this work was too difficult for me. 8. ... of their answers were excellent. 9. ... of their conversation was about the institute. 10. There are ... new pictures in this room. 11. There are ... teachers at our school, and ... of them are women. 12. ... of these plays are quite ... new. 13. Thanks awfully for the books you sent me yesterday. - - Don't mention it, it wasn't ... bother. 14. ... of her advice was useful. 15. He had ... pairs of socks.

### **3.14 Choose the correct form.**

1. There (is, are) a large table in my room.
2. There (is, are) three windows in my classroom.
3. There (is, are) a table and four chairs in my living-room.
4. There (is, are) a blackboard, four desks and five chairs in our class-room.
5. There (is, are) a text-book and two exercise-books on the table.
6. There (is, are) two shops and a cinema in my street.

## **IV. Числівник /NUMERAL. Прийменник / PREPOSITION.**

**Числівник** - частина мови, яка позначає кількість предметів або їх порядок при рахунку. Числівники діляться на **кількісні і порядкові**.

Кількісні числівники від 1 до 12 - прості. Вони не мають спеціальних закінчень.

<b>Cardinal</b>	<b>Ordinal</b>
<b>Numerals</b>	<b>Numerals</b>
(кількісні	(порядкові

числівники)		числівники)
1	one	the first



2	two	the second
3	three	the third
4	four	the fourth
5	five	the fifth
6	six	the sixth
7	seven	the seventh
8	eight	the eighth
9	nine	the ninth
10	ten	the tenth
11	eleven	the eleventh
12	twelve	the twelfth

Кількісні числівники від 13 до 19 - закінчуються на суфікс - **teen**.

13	thirteen	17	seventeen
14	fourteen	18	eighteen
15	fifteen	19	nineteen
16	sixteen		

Кількісні числівники, що позначають десятки, закінчуються на суфікс - **ty**.

20	twenty	60	sixty
30	thirty	70	seventy
40	forty	80	eighty
50	fifty	90	ninety

При утворенні числівників, що позначають десятки, додається суфікс - **eth** і буква **y** змінюється на букву **i**.

<b>thirtieth</b>	<b>sixtieth</b>
<b>fortieth</b>	<b>seventieth</b>
<b>fiftieth</b>	<b>eightieth</b>
	<b>ninetieth</b>

Складні числівники, наприклад, двадцять другий (22), тридцять третій (33) і т.д. при утворенні порядкового числівника змінюють форму тільки другого слова. Після сотен перед десятками, а якщо десятків немає, перед одиницями, для утворення числівника використовується слово **and**: 134 – one hundred **and** thirty four, 205 – two hundred and five.

21 - the twenty-first

22 - the twenty-second

23 - the twenty-third

100 - one (a) hundred

1,000 - one (a) thousand

1,000,000 - one (a) million

1,000,000,000 - a (one) milliard (в Англії); a (one) billion (в США)

В англійській мові рік читається парами числівників, наприклад:

Рік 1981 - nineteen eighty one

Рік 1900 - nineteen hundred

Рік 2000 - two thousand

26 лютого - the twenty sixth of February

#### ***4.1 Read the numerals***

1) 2, 12, 20; 3, 13, 30; 4, 14, 40; 5, 15, 50;

6, 16, 60; 7, 17, 70; 8, 18, 80; 9, 19, 90.

2) 134; 245; 306; 403; 6,075; 8,279; 1, 005; 2,625; 5,247; 893

#### ***4.2 Read these cardinal and ordinal numerals.***

1) 5, 18, 12, 19, 10, 20, 38, 43, 157, 587, 908, 1600, 4765, 22 215.

2) 1-й, 2-й, 3-й, 4-й, 5-й, 21-й, 33-й, 13-й, 50-й.

#### ***4.3 Write down the numerals:***

1, 11, 21; 2, 12, 20; 3,13,30; 4, 14, 40; 5, 15, 50; 6, 16, 60; 8, 18, 80; 9, 19, 90; 100, 103, 300, 425; 1.000; 1.015

#### ***4.4 Write the following cardinal numerals with letters and make the corresponding ordinal numerals.***

1; 2; 3; 4; 5; 11; 12; 14; 15; 21; 25; 28; 30; 52; 67; 74; 83; 99; 100.

#### ***4.5 Translate into English***

12 січня 1999р. 22 березня 1934 р 1 червня 2010 р, 31 березня 1950р., 26 травня 1900 р, 16 липня 2005 року, 5 грудня 2003р.

#### ***\*4.6 Answer the following questions.***

1) When do the British celebrate Christmas Day and Halloween?

2) When do people in Ukraine celebrate Christmas and Victory Day?

3) When is the International Students' Day held?

4) When do you celebrate your birthday?

**\*4.7 Match the information and make up sentences.**

*Model: A great English ... was born in ...*

1564	Ch. Chaplin, a film actor
1642	G. Stephenson, an inventor
1781	W. Shakespeare, a playwright
1889	Queen Elisabeth II
1926	I. Newton, a scientist

### Прийменник / PREPOSITION.

Прийменник	Translation (Переклад)	Приклади (Examples)
on	на в	The dairy is on the dressing table. I'll go to the beach on Sunday.
in	в	They buy everything in the supermarket.
at	в, у	I am at home. Come at ten o'clock.
under	під	Don't go under this bridge.
in front of	спереду	The flowers are in front of the building.
across	через	Go across the bridge.
near	поруч з біля	The house is near the shop.
between	між	The books are between the copybooks.
among	серед	Be among people.
to	до в	Come to me. I go to school at 8 o'clock.

into	в (у)	Put pencils into the pencil-box.
towards	у напрямку до	Let's walk towards the fields.
from	від з	Don't run away from this dog. He is from England.
until	до	They waited until the evening.
till	поки, до	Don't buy ice-creams till we come.
before	перед, до	He came before her.
after	після	Let's go out after classes.
out of	з (зсередины)	She ran out of the flat.

#### ***4.8 Read, translate and remember.***

##### **Где?**

On the table – на столе

On the floor, on the desk, on the bank of the river, on the desk, on the windowsill, on the lake.

##### **Куда?**

On the table – на стол

On the floor, on the desk, on the bank of the river, on the desk, on the windowsill, on the lake.

##### **Где?**

In the room – в комнате

In the kitchen, in the box, in the cup, in the flat, in the cupboard, in the sea, in the forest.

##### **Куда?**

Into the kitchen, into the box, into the cup, into the flat, into the cupboard, into the sea, into the forest.

##### **Где?**

At the theatre, at the cinema, at the museum, at the shop, at the university, at the hotel.

### **Куда?**

To the theatre, to the cinema, to the museum, to the shop, to the university, to the hotel.

#### **4.9 Put in on, in, into, to, with or by.**

1. Where is the book? - - It is ... the table. 2. Where is the tea? — It is ... the cup. 3. Put the plates ... the table. 4. Put the book ... the bag. 5. There is a beautiful picture ... the wall. 6. He went ... the room. 7. I like to sit ... the sofa ... my room. 8. Mother is cooking dinner ... the kitchen. 9. She went ... the room and sat down ... the sofa. 10. There are many people ... the park today. 11. Don't stand ... the window. 12. We are going ... the cinema. 13. He was walking ... his mother. 14. He put his hand ... his pocket, took out a letter and dropped it ... the mail-box. 15. .We did not want to stay ... town on such a hot day. 16. We went ... the garden and sat down ... a bench. 17. The teacher hung a picture ... the blackboard. 18. There are many people ... the park today. 19. There is a girl standing ... the bridge. Why is she crying? - She has dropped her doll ... the water. 20. There were two maps ... the wall and some flowers ... the window-sills. 21. Where is your little sister? - - She is ... bed. 22. There were some books and pens ... the teacher's table.

#### **4.10 Translate from Ukrainian into English.**

О четвертій годині, до речі, на автобусі, в середу, у відпустці, пішки, помилково, в суботу, на сніданок, по телевізору, на заняттях, між машинами, після обіду, про природу, за будівлею, над столом, під ліжком, з моєю сестрою, після роботи, в коробку, в коробці, в театрі, у стіни, через 25 хвилин, з кінотеатру, після вечірки, підійти до дошки, увійти в кімнату, за комп'ютером, під сумкою, під час, випадково, помилково.

#### **4.11 Put in the necessary preposition if it is necessary.**

1. Jane is arriving ... January. 2. It snows here every year ... December. We always go outside and play in the snow ... Christmas day. 3. Michael is leaving ... Friday

noon. 4. Frankie started working for her law firm ... 1995. 5. Franklin began working on the project ... yesterday. 6. Normally,... New Year's Eve, there is a tradition to kiss the one you love ... midnight. 7. Don't be ridiculous; there were no telephones ... the seventeenth century! 8. The plane leaves tomorrow morning ... 8:00 AM. 9. The hills here are covered with wild flowers ... spring. 10. We met at the restaurant ... 6:30.

## V. Іменник / the Noun

**Іменник** – це самостійна частина мови, яка позначає предмет та відповідає на питання *who is this?* (хто це?) та *what is this?* (що це?).

Злічувані іменники	Незлічувані іменники
1. Люди, тварини, рослини: <i>friend, cat, rose</i>	1. Речовини і матеріали: <i>cotton, sand</i>
2. Предмети, що мають форму: <i>ball, house</i>	2. Рідини і гази: <i>water, air</i>
3. Міри та грошові одиниці: <i>hour, hryvnia</i>	3. Мови: <i>French</i>
4. Соціальні групи: <i>family, party</i>	4. Абстрактні поняття: <i>love, happiness, peace</i>
5. Деталі й частини: <i>element, drop</i>	5. Такі іменники як: <i>advice, cash, information, money, luck, luggage, news, soap, work.</i>
6. Абстрактні поняття, що сприймаються як ціле: <i>opinion, answer</i>	

### Утворення множини іменників

Спосіб утворення множини	Приклад утворення	Примітка
<i>За допомогою закінчення</i>		

<b>I</b>	+ <b>-s</b>	<i>a set – sets</i> <i>a name – names</i> <i>a boy – boys</i>	[s] після глухої приголосної <u>АЛЕ:</u> <i>mouth – mouths</i> [z] після дзвінкої голосної і після приголосної
	(-ge; -ce; -ze; -se;) + <b>-s</b>	<i>a place – places</i> <i>a prize – prizes</i> <i>a horse – horses</i>	[iz] <u>АЛЕ:</u> <i>a house – houses</i>
	(-s; -ss; -sh; -ch; -x;) + <b>-es</b>	<i>a bus – buses</i> <i>a box – boxes</i> <i>a class – classes</i> <i>a church – churches</i>	[iz]
	-o + <b>-es</b>	<i>a torpedo – torpedoes</i> <i>a hero – heroes</i> <i>a potato – potatoes</i>	<u>АЛЕ:</u> <i>photos, videos, kilos</i> <u>Подвійний варіант:</u> <i>a flamingo – flamingos (es)</i> <i>a volcano – volcanos (es)</i>
	-y + <b>-s = ies</b> (після голосної)	<i>a city – cities</i> <i>a spy – spies</i>	<u>АЛЕ:</u> <i>Kennedys,</i> <i>the two Germanys</i>
	(-ay; -ey; oy;) + <b>-s = ys</b>	<i>a ray – rays</i> <i>a journey – journeys</i>	-
	-f (-fe) + <b>-s = ves</b> [vz]	<i>a wife – wives</i> <i>a half – halves</i> <i>a life – lives</i>	<u>АЛЕ:</u> <i>roofs, beliefs, chiefs, safes</i> <u>Подвійний варіант:</u> <i>dwarfs (ves) карлик, hoofs (ves) конито, handkerchiefs (ves) хусточка</i>

			<u>АЛЕ:</u> <i>a still life</i> (натюрморт) – <i>still lifes</i> (натюрморти)
<b>II</b>	+ <b>-en</b>	<i>an ox – oxen</i> <i>a child – children</i> <i>a brother –</i> <i>brethren (реліг.)</i>	-
<b>Інші способи утворення</b>			
<b>III</b>	Зміною кореневої голосної	<i>child – children</i> (дитина – діти) <i>foot – feet</i> (нога – ноги) <i>goose – geese</i> (гуси – гуси) <i>louse – lice</i> (воша – воші) <i>man – men</i> (чоловік – чоловіки) <i>mouse – mice</i> (миша – миші) <i>ox – oxen</i> (бик – бики) <i>tooth – teeth</i> (зуб – зуби) <i>woman – women</i> (жінка – жінки)	-
<b>IV</b>	Збіг форм однини і множини	<i>a fish – two fish</i> <i>a Chinese – many</i> <i>Chinese</i>	<u>АЛЕ:</u> <i>a fish – fishes</i> (у значенні «різноманітні види риб»)



		<i>a sheep – three sheep</i> <i>a means – numerous means</i>	
<b>V</b>	Іменники латинського походження на:		-
	<b>-us = i</b>	<i>a stimulus</i> (стимул) – <i>stimuli</i> <i>a bacillus</i> (бацила) – <i>bacilli</i>	<u>АЛЕ</u> : <i>a bonus – bonuses</i> , <i>a virus – viruses</i> <u>Подвійний варіант</u> : <i>a radius – radiuses(radii)</i>
	<b>-a = ae</b>	<i>an alumna – alumnae</i> <i>a larva (личинка) – larvae</i>	<u>АЛЕ</u> : <i>an area – areas</i> , <i>a diploma – diplomas</i> , <i>an arena – arenas</i> <u>Подвійний варіант</u> : <i>a formula – formulas</i> (в загальному значенні) <i>formulae</i> (в матем.)
	<b>-um = a</b>	<i>a stratum</i> (шар геол.) – <i>strata</i> <i>an agendum – agenda</i>	<u>АЛЕ</u> : <i>an album – albums</i> , <i>a chrysanthemum – chrysanthemums</i> <u>Подвійний варіант</u> : <i>a memorandum – memorandums</i>
	<b>-ex; -ix = ces</b>	<i>an index – indices</i> (матем.) <i>an appendix – appendices</i> (в книгах)	<u>АЛЕ</u> : <i>indexes</i> (в книгах), <i>appendixes</i> (в медицині)

<b>VI</b>	Іменники грецького походження на:		-
	-s = es	<i>a thesis – theses</i> <i>a crisis – crises</i>	<u>АЛЕ</u> : <i>a metropolis – metropolises</i>
	-n = a	<i>a criterion – criteria</i> <i>a phenomenon – phenomena</i>	<u>АЛЕ</u> : <i>a demon – demons,</i> <i>an electron – electrons</i>
<b>VII</b>	Складені іменники	<i>a breakdown – breakdowns,</i> <i>an assistant director – assistant directors,</i> <i>an Englishman – Englishmen</i>	<u>АЛЕ</u> : <i>a mother-in-love – mothers-in-love,</i> <i>a passer-by – passers-by,</i> <i>a woman doctor – women doctors</i>
<b>VIII</b>	Скорочення	<i>p. (page) – pp. (pages)</i> <i>Mr. (Mister) – Messrs</i> <i>MP (Member of Parliament) – MPs</i> <i>VIP – VIPs</i>	

### Присвійний відмінок (The Possessive Case)

Присвійний відмінок вказує на належність предмета якійсь особі. В однині він утворюється додаванням до іменника **апострофа** і закінчення **-s**, яке

ВИМОВЛЯЄТЬСЯ за тими самими правилами, що й закінчення множини іменників.

*the girl's book* — книжка дівчинки

*the cat's tail* — хвіст kota

Присвійний відмінок іменників у множині утворюється додаванням до них **апострофа після** закінчення **-s**: *students' books* — книжки студентів

Якщо іменник у множині **не** закінчується на **-s**, то присвійний відмінок утворюється додаванням **-'s**:

*the children's toys* — дитячі іграшки

**Замість** присвійного відмінка може вживатися **іменник із прийменником of**:

*my friend's brother* — *the brother of my friend* (брат мого друга)

**5.1 Read the nouns and classify them into 3 groups: a) with the sound [s] in the plural; b) with the sound [(I)z]; c) exceptions.**

Rooms, hands, hats, children, fish, boys, books, foxes, horses, brushes, mouths, boxes, potatoes, roofs, steps, computers, leaves, bananas, houses, feet, watches, minutes, dollars, guides, telephones, eyes, squares, names, nurses, women, jobs, mice, cameras, men, shelves, teeth, news.

**\*5.2 Write the nouns in the plural form.**

A farmer, a country, a city, a day, a disc, a leaf, an address, a lemon, an apple, a child, a man, a house, a mouse, a tooth, a photo, hair, a potato, a box, a hobby, an exercise-book, a piano, a son-in-law, a wife, a gallery, a toy, a roof, a foot, money.

**\*\*5.3 Write the sentences in the plural form.**

- 1) I am a student.
- 2) He is French.
- 3) This is a book.
- 4) That is a man.
- 5) This woman has a large family.

#### **5.4 Translate into Ukrainian.**

1. Jack London's novels, John Lennon's songs, Ostap Vyshnya's short stories, Schevcheko's works, my sisters' names, my sister's children, this child's mother, my friend's sister, these students' books, the teacher's bag.

#### **\*5.5 Form the Possessive Case of the nouns.**

1) jeans, Peter 2) boy-friend, Bess 3) best test, Denis 4) TV-set, my mother-in-law  
5) children, Mike and Mary 6) best red dress, Helen  
7) faces, children.

#### **5.6 Answer the following questions.**

1. What is your sister's /brother's name? 2. What is your friend's favourite subject?  
3. Where is your parents' house? 4. What is your mother's hobby?  
5. Whose pen is it? 6. Whose exercise-book is over there?

#### **5.7 Write the countable and uncountable nouns into two different columns:**

Wall, pen, air, picture, water, match, tea, time, hour, bread, river, friend, cigarette, cheese, teacher, glass (стакан), glass (стекло), paper (бумага), paper (газета), music, coffee, armchair, gold, ship, milk, shop, idea, ice, furniture, butter, wood, tree, word, ink, money, coin, university, hero, assistant, darkness, meat, instrument.

#### **5.8 Give the plural of the following nouns.**

Toe, city, hero, piano, calf, cliff, proof, chief, stitch, bath, belief, life, shelf, berry, valley, roof, pen, window, wall, week, clock, ship, library, watch, dress, country, glass, day, party, play, bus, leaf, life, colony, fox, half, mass, eye, language, place, key, thief, ray, bush, mouth, journey.

#### **5.9 Give the singular of the following nouns.**

Breakdowns, horses, sets, journeys, geese, potatoes, rays, churches, classes, places, Englishmen, prizes, halves, cities, torpedoes, lives, boxes, spies, buses, boys, sheep, diplomas, names, heroes, wives.

#### **5.10 Make the nouns in bold plural.**

1. A **copy** of the contract was sent to London.
2. The last **leaf** fell from the tree.

3. The woman standing by the window is our **secretary**.
4. This shoe is too large for my **foot**.
5. The **mouse** was caught.
6. What is the **child**'s name?
7. The **roof** of the house was covered with snow.
8. A **potato** is a vegetable and a cherry is a fruit.

**5.11 Make the nouns in bold singular.**

1. These **factories** produce furniture.
2. The **wives** of the sailors came to the shore.
3. I have hurt my **feet** and hands.
4. If we are lucky, we shall see **oxen, sheep, cows and geese**.
5. Do your **teeth** still ache?
6. These are my friends' **studies**.
7. These **ladies** are those gentlemen's wives.
8. The **children** are sitting on the benches.

**\*5.12 Give the corresponding feminine nouns (use the dictionary).**

A lion, a tiger, an actor, a poet, a man, an uncle, a husband, a brother, a grandfather, a son, a master, a baron, a count, a shepherd, a host.

**\*5.13 Give the corresponding masculine nouns (use the dictionary).**

A lady, a girl, a niece, Mrs. Smith, a widow, a stewardess, a French woman, a cow, a queen, a princess, a duchess, a hen, a mother.

**5.14 Paraphrase the following word combinations using possessive case.**

1. The room of my friend. 2. The questions of my son. 3. The wife of my brother.
4. The table of our teacher. 5. The poems of Pushkin. 6. The voice of this girl. 7. The new club of the workers. 8. The letter of Pete. 9. The car of my parents. 10. The life of this woman. 11. The handbags of these women. 12. The flat of my sister
13. The children of my brother. 14. The room of the boys. 15. The name of this girl. 16. The work of these students.

**5.15 Rewrite these sentences using 's, s', or just an apostrophe (')**

1. The books for children. These are children's books.
2. This bag belongs to my friend. .
3. He described the career of the actress. .
4. This is the signature of Mr Brown. .
5. The mistakes which students make. .
6. This is a club for women. .
7. It's a school for girls. .
8. The room is for the guests. .
9. This umbrella belongs to James. .
10. I liked the dinner we had yesterday at the cafe belonging to Mike. .

**5.16 Translate from Ukrainian into English in two ways, using both possessive and common cases.**

Лист своєї сестри, ковзани мого брата, зошити ваших учнів, речі наших дітей, пташине гніздо, родина мого друга, батько мого друга, мати мого друга, сумка Тома, словарі студентів, книги нашого вчителя, твори цього хлопчика, голос моєї сестри, сміх і крики дітей, мокрі чоботи хлопчиків, бабусине крісло.

**5.17 Use possessive case.**

1. I like \_\_\_\_\_ (the camera / Ann).
2. What is \_\_\_\_\_ (the name / this city)?
3. When is \_\_\_\_\_ (the birthday / your sister)?
4. Do you like \_\_\_\_\_ (the colour / this dress)?
5. What is \_\_\_\_\_ (the address / Jill)?
6. Write your name at \_\_\_\_\_ (the top / the page)?
7. Are these \_\_\_\_\_ (the children) pens?
8. Are you \_\_\_\_\_ (Nancy) daughter?
9. Here's \_\_\_\_\_ (my parents) address.
10. What's \_\_\_\_\_ (the Wilsons) number?

11. Carol and Nadine are sisters. That's \_\_\_\_\_ (Carol and Nadine) father.

## VI. Прикметник / The ADJECTIVE

Прикметники вказують на ознаку, якість або властивість предметів (який, яка, яке?). В англійській мові, так само як і в українській, є **прості, похідні і складні (складені)** прикметники.

**Прості прикметники (Simple Adjectives):**

*nice, green, small, right, good.*

**Похідні прикметники (Derived Adjectives)** (прикметники з суфіксами або префіксами):

*dirty, childish, friendly, unknown, useful .*

**Складні (складені) прикметники (Compound Adjectives):**

*light-blue, red-hot, good-looking, well-known .*

Серед англійських складних прикметників є окрема група прикметників з суфіксом **-ed** (складно-похідні прикметники), наприклад: *blue-eyed* (синьоокий), *long-legged* (довгоногий), *absent-minded* (неуважний).

### Способи утворення ступенів порівняння прикметників

Спосіб утворення	Звичайний <b>Positive</b>	Вищий <b>Comparative</b>	Найвищий <b>Superlative</b>	Примітки
<b><i>Синтетичний спосіб (в коротких словах: 1-2 склади)</i></b>				
За допомогою закінчення: + <b>-er, -est</b> -y+ <b>-er,-est</b> = - <b>ier, -iest</b> (після приголосної)	<i>clean</i> <i>gay</i> <i>sad</i> <i>funny</i> <i>busy</i> <i>early</i>	<i>cleaner</i> <i>gayer</i> <i>sadder</i> <i>funnier</i> <i>busier</i> <i>earlier</i>	<i>cleanest</i> <i>gayest</i> <i>saddest</i> <i>funniest</i> <i>busiest</i> <i>earliest</i>	Кінцева приголосна подвоюється
За допомогою закінчення:	<i>nice</i> <i>large</i>	<i>nicer</i> <i>larger</i>	<i>nicest</i> <i>largest</i>	

+ <b>-r, -st</b> (в словах на <b>-e</b> )				
<b>Аналітичний спосіб (в довгих словах)</b>				
За допомогою слів <b>more / less, the most / the least</b>	<i>dangerous</i> <i>important</i>	<i>more dangerous</i> <i>less important</i>	<i>the most dangerous</i> <i>the least important</i>	
<b>Паралельні форми</b>				
	<i>polite</i> <i>clever</i> <i>unhappy</i>	<i>politer</i> <i>more polite</i> <i>cleverer</i> <i>more cleverer</i> <i>unhappier</i> <i>more unhappy</i>	<i>politest</i> <i>the most polite</i> <i>cleverest</i> <i>the most clever</i> <i>unhappiest</i> <i>the most unhappy</i>	
<b>Утворення не за загальними правилами</b>				
	good хороший	better кращий	(the) best найкращий	
	bad поганий	worse гірший	(the) worst найгірший.	
	little маленький	less менший	(the) least найменший	
	old старий	elder старший (за віком, родині) older	the eldest найстарший the oldest найстарший	



		старший		
	far далекий	farther або further дальший	the farthest або the furthest найdaleший	

Іменники, які визначаються прикметниками в найвищому ступені, вживаються з означеним артиклем.

*This is the best room in the hotel. Yesterday was the hottest day of the summer.*

Прикметник **the most** вживається не тільки для утворення найвищого ступеню, але і в інших випадках:

- «надто, вельми»: *This is a most unusual flower.* – Це надто незвична квітка. (з неозначеним артиклем)
- «здебільшого, більша частина»: *Most men are fond of football.*

Наступні слова можуть брати участь в порівнянні:

**than** (ніж) в порівняльному ступені:

E.g. He is younger than Tom.

**much** в порівняльному ступені в значенні набагато, набагато:

E.g. She's much nicer than her sister.

**as ... as** (такий ... як) для порівняння рівних об'єктів:

E.g. Jim is as tall as Peter.

not as / so ... as (не такий ... як) для порівняння нерівних об'єктів:

E.g. He is not as tall as his father.

### **6.1 Make Comparative and Superlative degrees.**

Big, heavy, bad, famous, good, expensive, hot, little, fat, beautiful, far, easy, old, white, thin, thick, nice, warm, cold, merry, dry, clean, dirty, wide, deep, brave, difficult, interesting, late.

### **6.2 Translate into English.**

Старий, старше, найстаріший, найстарший, мій старший брат, мій старий друг, дальший, найдальший, найдовший, коротше, щасливий, щасливіше, найщасливіший, найкращий, найчорніший, довше, гірше, краще, тепліше, її кращий друг, її молодший син, його старший син.

### **6.3 Open the brackets and make Comparative or Superlative degrees.**

1. What is (large): the United States or Canada? 2. What is the name of the (big) port in the United States? 3. Odessa is one of the (large) city in Ukraine. 4. The London underground is the (old) in the world. 5. There is a (great) number of cars and buses in the streets of Kyiv than in any other city of Ukraine. 6. Lviv is one of the (beautiful) cities in the world. 7. The rivers in America are much (big) than those in England. 8. The island of Great Britain is (small) than Greenland. 9. What is the name of the (high) mountain in Asia? 10. The English Channel is (wide) than the straits of Gibraltar. 11. Ukraine is a very (large) country.

### **6.4 Put in as ... as or so ... as.**

1. Mike is ... tall ... Pete. 2. Kate is not ... nice ... Ann. 3. My room is ... light ... this one. 4. This book is not ... thin ... that one. 5. Sergei is... old ... Michael. 6. She is ... young ... Tom's brother. 7. This woman is ... good ... that one. 8. Nick's English is not ... good ... his friend's. 9. I am not ... tall ... Pete. 10. This woman is ... young ... that one. 12. I am ... thin ... you. 13. Kate is ... lazy ... her brother. 14. This child is not ... small ... that one.

### **6.5 Translate the words in brackets.**

1. This is (найцікавіша книга) I have ever read on this subject.
2. Swimming is (вкрай популярний) summer sport.
3. Shakespeare is (найвидатніший) English poet and playwright of all the ages.
4. Coal is (вкрай важливий) natural resource.
5. He is (вельми розумний) man.

**6.6 Complete these sentences. Use the comparative of the words in brackets (+than). Example: My toothache is more painful than it was yesterday, (painful)**

1. You look \_\_\_\_\_ you were last year. Have you lost weight? (thin)

2. You won't believe it but he is \_\_\_\_\_ his sister, (talkative)
3. I usually buy vegetables at the market. It's much \_\_\_\_\_. (cheap)
4. The problem is not so complicated. It's \_\_\_\_\_ you think, (simple)
5. She looks like her mother but I think she is even \_\_\_\_\_. (beautiful)
6. Health and happiness are \_\_\_\_\_ money, (important)
7. I prefer this armchair. It is \_\_\_\_\_. (comfortable)
8. I like the countryside. It's \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ living in a town, (healthy/peaceful)

**6.7 Complete these sentences using an antonym in its Comparative degree.**

*E.g. It's too noisy here. Can we go somewhere quieter?*

1. This coffee is very weak. I like it a bit \_\_\_\_\_
2. The hotel was surprisingly big. I expected it to be \_\_\_\_\_.
3. The hotel was surprisingly cheap. I expected it to be \_\_\_\_\_.
4. The weather is too cold in this country. I'd like to live somewhere \_\_\_\_\_.
5. My job is a bit boring sometimes. I'd like to do something \_\_\_\_\_.
6. I was surprised how easy it was to use the computer. I thought it would be \_\_\_\_\_.
7. Don't worry. The situation isn't so bad. It could be \_\_\_\_\_.
8. You were a bit depressed yesterday but you look \_\_\_\_\_ today.
9. I was surprised we got here so quickly. I expected the journey to take \_\_\_\_\_.

**6.8 Complete the sentences using a Comparative degree of the adjectives in the box .**

*big crowded early easy high important interested peaceful reliable thin  
serious simple*

*E.g. I felt tired last night, so I went to bed earlier than usual.*

1. I'd like to have a \_\_\_\_\_ car. The one I have got keeps breaking down.
2. Unfortunately her illness was \_\_\_\_\_ than we thought at first.
3. You look \_\_\_\_\_. Have you lost weight?
4. I want a \_\_\_\_\_ flat. We don't have enough space here.
5. He doesn't study very hard. He's \_\_\_\_\_ in having a good time.
6. Health and happiness are \_\_\_\_\_ money.

7. The instructions were very complicated. They could have been \_\_\_\_\_.
8. There were a lot of people in the bus. It was \_\_\_\_\_ usual.
9. I like living in the countryside. It's \_\_\_\_\_ than living in a town.
10. You'll find your way around the town \_\_\_\_\_ if you have a good map.
11. In some parts of the country, prices are \_\_\_\_\_ than in others.

**6.9 Complete the sentences using the adjectives in the brackets.**

1. The United States is very large but Canada is \_\_\_\_\_. (*large*)
2. What's \_\_\_\_\_ river in the world? (*long*)
3. He was a bit depressed yesterday but he looks \_\_\_\_\_ today. (*happy*)
4. It was an awful day \_\_\_\_\_ of my life. (*bad*)
5. What is \_\_\_\_\_ sport in your country? (*popular*)
6. Everest is \_\_\_\_\_ mountain in the world. It is \_\_\_\_\_ than other mountains. (*high*).
7. We had a great holiday. It was one of the \_\_\_\_\_ holidays we've ever had. (*enjoyable*)
8. I prefer this chair to the other one. It's \_\_\_\_\_. (*comfortable*)
9. What's \_\_\_\_\_ way of getting from here to the station? (*quick*)

**\*6.10 Make the sentences synonymic by inserting the necessary word in each second sentence.**

1. My father is the hardest-working person I know. No one I know works as ... as my father.
2. I've never met such an intelligent person. She is ... person I've ever met.
3. We don't have as much money as they do. They have ... money than we do.
4. Simon is much older than I am. I am as ... as Simon.
5. I can't play tennis as well as she can. She plays tennis ... I can.

**6.11 Complete the sentences choosing the correct form (somewhere both are correct).**

1. Tom looks *older / elder* than he really is.
2. My *older / elder* brother is a pilot.
3. I'm surprised Diane is only 25. I thought she was *older / elder*.
4. Ann's younger sister is still at school. Her *older / elder* sister is a nurse.

5. Martin is *older /elder* than his brother.

**6.12 Transform the sentences using *as..as..***

*E.g. I'm quite tall but you are taller. I'm not as tall as you.*

1. My salary is high but yours is higher. My salary isn't ...
2. You know a bit about cars but I know more. You don't ...
3. It's still cold but it was colder yesterday. It isn't ...
4. I still feel a bit tired but I felt a lot more tired yesterday. I don't ...
5. They've live here for quite a long time but we've lived here longer. They haven't ...

**6.13. Complete the sentences using *than ...or as....***

*E.g. I can't reach as high as you. You are taller than me.*

1. He doesn't know much. You know more ... .
2. I don't work particularly hard. Most people work as hard ... .
3. We were very surprised. Nobody was more surprised ... .
4. She's not a very good player. I'm a better player ... .
5. They've been very lucky. I wish we were as lucky ... .

**6.14 Complete the sentences using the adjectives in the brackets.**

*E.g. I like warm weather. The warmer the weather, the better I feel. (feel).*

1. I didn't really like him when we first met. But the more I got to know him, ... .  
( much / like)
2. If you're in business, you want to make a profit. The more goods you sell, ... . (high / profit)
3. It's hard to concentrate when you're tired. The more tired you are, ... (hard)
4. He had to wait long. The longer he waited, ... . (impatient / become)

**PART 3. Speaking**

*Some Necessary Greetings*

*Some Phrases of Parting*

Hi! Hello!	Good-bye / Bye-bye / Bye.
How do you do? – Добрий день!	So long – Пока!
How are you? – Як справи?	See you again / soon / later –
Glad /nice to meet you – Приємно познайомитися.	Побачимося пізніше.
Meet my friend – Познайомся з моїм другом.	I must be going. – Мені треба йти. All the best. – Бажаю успіху.

### *Sample Dialogue*

A: Hello!

B: Hi! Meet my friend Petro. He is a first-year student. He is Ukrainian.

A: Nice to meet you. My name is Alice.

C: I'm glad to meet you too. And where are you from, Alice?

A: I am from France. But I'm in a hurry now. So long.

*B and C:* See you soon.

### *1. Make up dialogues putting the sentences in the right order.*

A.

He is married.

Is he our new manager?

I don't know.

What is his name?

What is his E-mail address?

Is he married or single?

His name is Dick.

Yes, he is.

B.

Yes, she is.

She is Spanish. She lives in Madrid.

Is she Italian or Spanish?

And what is her occupation?

Is Alice your friend?

And can she speak English?

Yes, she can.

She is a guide. She can speak three  
foreign languages.

**\* 2. Read the answers. What were the questions?**

1. \_\_\_\_\_ ? – I'm fine, thanks.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ ? – They are from Italy.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ ? – My girl-friend is in Greece.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ ? – Our names are Kate and Sally.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ ? – No, I am single.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ ? – No, I'm a student.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ ? – It is 543 442 661.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ ? – It is 17 Boonina Street, Odessa.

**\*3. Complete the dialogue and make up your own dialogues using the previous patterns.**

- Hello, Ted.
- ..., Helen. ...?
- I'm fine, thanks. ... my friend Sam. He is ... London.
- Oh! ... an Englishman?
- Yes.
- Glad ... .
- ... too.
- What do you do (for living)?
- ... a doctor.
- But we ... now. ... soon.
- All ... .

***Some information about your brief personal history***

Curriculum vitae [kq"rIkjulqm'vItaI] = CV – резюме

Resume ['rezjumeI] /USA/ – резюме

**Sample Curriculum Vitae**

Name	John Edward Harvey
Address and telephone number	27 South St., Stoke Ripton, Birnshire, XY195LM T-(49675) 223926
Date and place of birth	7 <sup>th</sup> August 1995, Bath
Nationality	British
Age	17
Education	2001-2009 Ripton County school. 2009-2010 Grant College of Further Education
Languages	French, German
Previous experience	Summer job working at a local suOdessaarket
Interests	Swimming, tennis, art, computer

**4. Make up the sentences using the following words.**

His name is...; lives...; was born...; he is..., studied at..., can speak..., had a job at..., is interested in... .

**\*5. Make up your own CV (printed).****6. Answer the questions and introduce yourself to your group mates.**

1. What's your first /family/ name? 2. How old are you? 3. Are you single or married? 4. When is your birthday? 5. Where are you from? 6. Where do you live? 7. What is your future profession? 8. What do you do in your spare time? 9. What do you think about your boy/girl friend? 10. What's your telephone number? 11. How do you spell your surname?

**7. Check the box that best describes your different personality traits.**



Personality Traits	Very	Tend to be	Somewhat	Can be	A little	Not at all
Hardworking						
Lazy						
Sociable						
Shy						
Moody						
Serious						
Easygoing						
Quiet						
Generous						
Outgoing						
Talkative						
Filial						
Friendly						
Selfish						

**8. Make a sentence:**

I'm very \_\_\_\_\_. I can be \_\_\_\_\_ ..

I tend to be \_\_\_\_\_. I'm somewhat \_\_\_\_\_ .

I'm a little \_\_\_\_\_. I'm not at all \_\_\_\_\_ .

**9. Match the personality trait with a behavior.**

Personality trait	Behavior
-------------------	----------

<b>Hardworking</b>	<b>Doesn't like to share</b>
<b>Lazy</b>	<b>Respects her parents</b>
<b>Sociable</b>	<b>Likes to gossip</b>
<b>Shy</b>	<b>Always gives presents</b>
<b>Moody</b>	<b>Doesn't get angry easily</b>
<b>Serious</b>	<b>Always thinking about things</b>
<b>Easygoing</b>	<b>Likes to go to parties</b>
<b>Quiet</b>	<b>Nervous to meet new people</b>
<b>Generous</b>	<b>Doesn't like to work</b>
<b>Outgoing</b>	<b>Always works overtime</b>
<b>Talkative</b>	<b>Easily angered</b>
<b>Filial</b>	<b>Likes to shake hands</b>
<b>Friendly</b>	<b>Has many friends</b>
<b>Selfish</b>	<b>Tells jokes</b>
<b>Funny</b>	<b>Doesn't like to talk</b>

**10. Discussion Questions:**

1. Describe your personality. Use the sentences and words from above.
2. Are you shy or sociable? Give an example.
3. Are you lazy or hardworking? Give an example.
4. Do you have a good sense of humor? Give an example.
5. Do people think you are funny? Give an example.
6. Are you ever moody? What puts you in a bad mood?
7. Are you neat or messy? Is your bedroom tidy or messy?
8. Do you think you are a generous person? Give an example.
9. Are you ever stingy? Are you ever selfish?
10. Are you a filial person? What do you do for your parents?
11. What personality trait is most important to you?
12. Would you like to change your personality?

13. If you could, what would you like to be like?
14. What's more important: personality or appearance?
15. Do you like serious or easygoing people?
16. What personality traits do you like in your friends?
17. Describe your friend's personality.
18. Do you and your friends have similar personalities?
19. Describe your father's personality.
20. Describe your mother's personality.
21. Describe your sibling's personality.
22. Describe your teacher's personality.

## Lesson 2

### OUR STUDIES

#### PART 1. Phonetic

*Прочитайте назви наступних приголосних букв:*

<i>буква</i>	Hh	Jj	Qq	Rr	Ww	Xx
<i>назва</i>	[eitʃ]	[dʒei]	[kju:]	[a:]	[dʌblju:]	[eks]
<i>читання</i>	[h]	[dʒ]	qu [kw]	[r]	[w]	[ks], [gz]

#### *Правила читання*

1. Буква **а** перед **1** + приголосна в закритому складі під наголосом зазвичай передає звук [o:]: *all, hall, small, salt, fall, call, halt*.

Якщо після букви **а** стоїть **1 + k**, то **1** в таких випадках не читається: *chalk, talk, walk*.

2. Буквосполучення **ew**, якщо воно не стоїть після **l**, **g**, **j**, передає звук [ju:]: *new, few, stew, dew, sew.*

Якщо буквосполученню **ew** передують літери **l**, **g** або **j**, то **ew** читається як [u:]:

*grew, flew, blew.*

3. Буква **Hh** читається як звук [h]: *him, his, hill, hi, hello, hide, hate, hold, hole, home.*

4. Буквосполучення **sh** читається як звук [ʃ], відповідний українському [ш]: *sheep, shop, shut, push, finish, shave, shelf, fish, she.*

5. Буквосполучення **ch** в більшості слів читається як звук [tʃ], а в словах грецького походження читається як звук [k]: *such, chess, chest, speech, teach/school, scheme, chemist.*

6. Буквосполучення **tch** в більшості слів передає звук [tʃ]: *catch, match, stitch, ditch, bleach,*

7. Буквосполучення **oo** має два типи читання. Воно читається як звук [u] перед буквою **k** і часто перед **d** і **t**; в інших випадках перед іншими приголосними (крім **g**) воно читається як [u:]: *book, took, look, good, moon. tool, fool, too, food, zoo.*

8. Буква **Jj** передає звук [dʒ], трохи пом'якшений за український [дж]: *jam, jump, July, gentle, jug, jet, judge, just, joke.*

9. Буквосполучення **qu** читається як звук [kw]: *quest, quite, quill, quick, queen.*

10. Буква **Rr** перед голосною передає звук [r]: *run, root, rat, drop, red, race, ran, drum, tree, street.*

11. 1 Буквосполучення **th** передає глухий звук [θ] на початку і в кінці слів, окрім службових: *thin, three, smith, fifth, tenth, three, theme, think.*

11. 2 Буквосполучення **th** передає дзвінкий звук [ð] на початку службових слів, і між голосними буквами: *that, then, them, bathe, with, they, this, that, those, these, mother, brother.*

12. Буква **Ww** і буквосполучення **wh** перед голосними (крім букви **o**) читається як **[w]**: *wine, well, way, we, wish, will, whip, whale, white, when, which, wheel.*

13. Буква **Xx** читається перед наголошеною голосною як звук **[gz]**, після наголошеної голосної як звук **[ks]**: *exam, example, exact, box, next, text, excellent, six, fix.*

**1. Read the following words:**

[ei] day, pay, May, aim, pain, name, date, table

[æ]: and, am, man, bad, stand, family, fat, flat

[ə]: a man, a tie, a pen, a table, an apple, an end,

[ai]: my, by, pie, tie, five, dine, find, might, night, life, nice

[k]: cat, kite, can, cake, back, black, make, take

[g]: big, bag, flag, pig, leg, glad, game

[tʃ]: chess, cheap, chin, child, inch, teacher, picture

[dʒ]: Jack, jam, change, danger, gin

[w]: way, why, wine, wait, wet, when, we,

[θ]: theme, thick, thin, theft, faith, smith, teeth

[ð]: they, then, that, this, these, them, bathe, breathe

[j]: yes, yet, yell, yard, yeast, yield

**2. Read the following words and write their transcription:**

Reach, quite, class, new, cold, book, silly, which, hide, shy, rock, tube, gentle, home, use, black, yet, space, few, cell, up, sooty, wild, kind, chalk, fuse, last, ask, pay, wage, jet, too, spoke, all, vast, call, moon, shut, quick, small, balky, shoot, whiff, spice, dust, husk, rail, each, loom, grind, trail, jet, cash, heal, liquid, toe, thick, thin, these, those, they, with, am, student, read.

**3. Read the following words paying attention to the pronunciation of the articles the [ðə], [ði] and a [ə], an [ən] in different positions:** a plan, a theatre, a busy street, a small house, a nice flat, a clever man; an arm, an engineer, an address, an

example, a good book, the nose, the lamp, the street, the flat, the page, the table, the desk.

**4. Read the following words and write their transcription:**

Cap, can, ice, came, nice, cat, neck, mice, fact, space, peck, pace, kin, keen, pact, face, gate, gem, gas, age, gym, page, egg, gin, game, beg, gag, jam, „Jim, Jack, Jane, sky, shame, dish, she, ship, shape, shave, fish, shine, chest, chin, match, catch, fetch, chick, chill, this, that, these, than, them, theme, faith, thick, thin.

**5. Read the following words and write their transcription:**

a) risk, red, ripe, read, rest, rally, hand, hay, hip, hate, heap, help, hide, yes, yell, easy, daddy, yet, yelp, my, by, myth, next, text, exam, sex, six, sixty, ring, thing, fang, bring, sing, gang, sling, drink, link, clink, pink, prank;

b)shelf, shy, sheet, dash, fish, chain, chick, change, catch, patch, mine, cage, fill, mile, Spain, miss, ice, page, back, space, click, game, gem, let, lest, gay, set, lay, say, lack, icy.

**PART 2. Grammar**

**I. Word order. Questions / Порядок слів. Питання.**

**Розповідні** речення містять повідомлення про події, факти, дії, почуття і так далі. Розповідне речення може бути стверджувальним або заперечним (негативним). В англійській мові існує твердий порядок слів, що означає, що **кожен** член речення має своє певне місце. Англійському розповідному реченню притаманний наступний (**прямий**) порядок слів:

підмет	присудок	додаток	обставина
<i>The man</i>	sent	a message	yesterday.
<i>Чоловік</i>	<i>відправив</i>	<i>повідомлення</i>	<i>вчора.</i>

**Додаток** зазвичай завжди стоїть після присудка. **Означення** може стояти перед будь-яким членом речення, вираженим іменником.

Означення	підмет	присудок	означення	додаток	обставина
-----------	--------	----------	-----------	---------	-----------

<i>The old</i>	man	sent	a long	a message	yesterday.
<i>Старий</i>	чоловік	відправив	довге	повідомлення	вчора.

Коли в реченні кілька **обставин**, то вони розташовуються в наступному порядку: *обставина способу дії, обставина місця, обставина часу*.

підмет	присудок	додаток	обставина		
			способу дії	місця	часу
<i>I</i>	<i>met</i>	<i>him</i>	<i>by chance</i>	<i>in the shop</i>	<i>yesterday.</i>
<i>Я</i>	<i>зустрів</i>	<i>його</i>	<i>випадково</i>	<i>у магазині</i>	<i>вчора.</i>

*Обставина часу* іноді може стояти **на початку** речення: *On Monday I'm going to Paris.*

Деякі *обставини часу* (напр. *always, never, also, often*) стоять **разом** з дієсловом в середині речення: *Tom always goes to work by car.*

Якщо присудок виражений одним словом (*goes, feel, cooked*) *обставина часу* стоїть **перед** дієсловом: *Lucy hardly ever watches television and rarely reads newspapers. Jim never phones me. I always have to phone him.*

Однак *обставини часу* стоять **після** *am / is / are / was / were*.

*E.g. Why are you always late? You are never on time.*

Якщо присудок складається з двох або більше слів, то *обставини часу* стоять **після** першого дієслова: *I can never remember his name. Ann does not usually smoke.*

### **1.1 Make the sentences from the words given below.**

*E.g. Madrid George from comes – George comes from Madrid.*

1. from John New York is.
2. in works my brother bank a.
3. Rostov year we last lived in.
4. I weekend at usually swimming the go.
5. we restaurant a Sunday on go to usually.

6. French Martin learning at is moment the.
7. very everybody the much party enjoyed.
8. after Sarah a gave the me lift party.
  9. fell so were we we tired all asleep.
  10. at of please your the write page name top the.

**1.2 Rewrite the sentences putting the words in the brackets on their place.**

*E.g. Ann doesn't drink tea. (often) – Ann doesn't often drinks tea.*

1. I don't have to work on Sundays. (*usually*)
2. Do you watch television in the evenings? (*always*)
3. Martin is learning French. He is learning Italian. (*also*)
4. That hotel is very expensive. (*probably*)
5. I can remember his name. (*never*)
6. Steve gets angry and shouts. (*hardly ever/ rarely*)
7. We meet on Sundays. (*sometimes*)
8. If you see her (*ever*), say a big hello to her.
9. You should come to the lecture on time. (*always*)
10. I am sorry, but they have left. (*already*)

**1.3 Correct the word order in the sentences given below.**

1. Often he is angry with his naughty children.
2. The unemployed gathered yesterday in the Central Square.
3. This love story romantically started in America long ago.
4. I know a little Spanish also.
5. Everybody very much enjoyed the party.
6. I met on my way home a friend of mine.
7. Usually she doesn't wear jeans.
8. She gave a present me on my birthday.

**1.4 Make up the sentences by putting the words in the correct order.**

1. plays\ piano\ she\ the\ nicely
2. small\ Ann\ a\ brown\ has\ table\ got



3. gave\ he\ me\ ring\ gold\ a
4. I \ at\ every\ six\ o'clock\ day\ swimming\ go
5. by taxi\ to work\ usually\ comes\ he
6. room\ Mary\ a\ is\ now\ cleaning
7. playing\ the\ in\ children\ at\ moment\ are\ garden\ the
8. When\ home\ came\ I\ children\ TV\ watching\ the\ were.

### **Питальні речення.**

**Зворотний порядок слів (*інверсія*)** - це такий порядок слів, при якому присудок або його частина стоїть **перед** підметом і вживається при побудові питального речення. В англійській мові існують **чотири типи** питальних речень: **1) загальні питання; 2) спеціальні питання; 3) альтернативні питання; 4) розділові питання.**

**1. Загальне питання (General Question)** відноситься до **всього** речення і передбачає відповідь *Yes* або *No*.

#### **Схема питання:**

Допоміжне дієслово + Підмет + Змістовне дієслово: *Does he smoke? - Yes, he does / No, he does not.*

**2. Спеціальне питання (Special Question)** починається з **питального слова.**

<b>When ?</b>	Коли?
<b>What?</b>	Що? Який?
<b>What colour ?</b>	Якого кольору ?
<b>Where ?</b>	Де? Куди?
<b>Who?</b>	Хто?
<b>Whom ?</b>	Кого? Кому?
<b>Whose ?</b>	Чий?
<b>Which ?</b>	Котрий ?

<b>Why ?</b>	Чому?
<b>How ?</b>	Як?
<b>How many ?</b>	Скільки? (Зі злічувальними іменниками)
<b>How much ?</b>	Скільки? (З незлічувальними іменниками)
<b>How long ?</b>	Як довго?

**Схема питання:**

Питальне слово + Допоміжне дієслово + Підмет + Змістовне дієслово: *Why are you laughing?*

Слова **what, which, whose** можуть вживатися з іменниками: *What sort of music do you like? Which coat is yours? Whose book is this?*

Слово **Which** зазвичай вживається коли вибір обмежений: *Which newspaper do you read?*

Слово **How** може вживатися з прикметниками і займенниками: *How big is his new car? How many brothers have you got?*

**3.Альтернативне питання(Alternative Question)** передбачає вибір між двома рівнозначними частинами мови , він складається ніби з двох загальних питань, з'єднаних союзом **or**: *Is it a book or is it a notebook?*

Можна спростити питання, скоротивши його другу частину: *Is it a book or a notebook?*

**4. Розділове питання (Disjunctive Question)** задається тоді, коли ми хочемо отримати підтвердження співрозмовника.

**Схема питання:**

Речення + Коротке питання загального типу.

У **короткому питанні** повторюється **допоміжне, модальне або зв'язкове** дієслово речення: *He is reading, isn't he?*

Якщо дієслово в реченні стоїть в позитивній формі, в короткому питанні дієслово стоїть в негативній формі, якщо дієслово в реченні стоїть в

негативній формі, то дієслово в короткому питанні стоїть в позитивній формі:

*He is there, isn't he? He is not there, is he?*

**1.5 Complete the questions by inserting the question words what / which / who.**

*E.g. What is that man's name?*

1. ... way shall we go? This way or the other way?
2. You can have tea or coffee. ... do you want?
3. "I can't find my umbrella." "... colour is it?"
4. ... is your favourite sport?
5. This is a very nice house ... room is yours?
6. ... is more expensive, meat or fish?
7. ... is older, Ann or George?
8. ... is your telephone number?
9. ... kind of TV programmes do you like watching?
10. "She's got three cars." "... car does she use most?"
11. "... nationality are you?" "I'm Brazilian."

**1.6 Ask the questions with the question words What / How.**

*E.g. Are his eyes blue? Green? Brown? - What color are his eyes?*

1. Did you get up at 7 o'clock? 7.30? 8.15?
2. Are you 20 years old? 21? 22?
3. Is the door red? Blue? Yellow?
4. Are these shoes size 37? 38? 39?
5. Is it 1000 miles from Paris to Moscow? 1500? 2000?
6. Is your room very big? Quite big? Not very big?
7. Do you like classical music? Rock? Folk music?
8. Can you run one kilometer? Five? Ten?
9. Is it Monday? Tuesday? Wednesday?
10. Is this box one kilogram? One and a half? Two?
11. Do you like horror films? Science fiction films? Thrillers? Comedies?

### 1.7 Make up the disjunctive questions.

*E.g. You usually start your work at nine o'clock, don't you?*

1. You usually start your work at nine o'clock,	a. is it?
2. Nick can't speak any foreign languages,	b. will he?
3. He's got a camera,	c. aren't there?
4. They never argue with me,	d. can he?
5. Sue's lazy,	e. hasn't he?
6. Helen didn't come to the party,	f. had he?
7. You can always trust me,	g. do they?
8. Tom won't mind if I use his phone,	h. did she?
9. There are a lot of people here,	i. don't you?
10. This isn't very interesting,	j. can't you?
11. He'd never met her before,	k. were you?
12. You weren't listening,	l. isn't she?

### 1.8 Put the questions to the underlined words.

*E.g. They went to Italy last year. Where did they go last year?*

1. It costs ten pounds.
2. Mrs Brown wants to see Sally.
3. We are going to leave at 6 p.m.
4. They are Mr. Smith's children.
5. Margaret was in Australia last year.
6. Janet and Paul live in the centre of London.
7. When I came home my son was watching TV.
8. Our teacher studied at Cambridge.

### 1.9 Ask Liz some questions. Pay attention on the example.

*E.g. You know that Liz plays tennis. You want to know how often. Ask her. — How often do you play tennis?*

1. You know that Liz reads newspaper. You want to know which one.
2. Perhaps Liz's sister plays tennis too. You want to know. Ask Liz.

3. You know that Liz gets up early. You want to know what time.
4. You know that Liz's brother works. You want to know what he does.
5. You know that Liz goes to the cinema a lot. You want to know how often. Ask her.
6. You don't know where Liz's mother lives. Ask Liz.

### ***1.10 Put the special questions.***

- 1) When...? → The dean comes at half past nine.
- 2) What...? → The girl asks us a lot of questions.
- 3) How often...? → We always air our classroom twice a day.
- 4) Who...? → They tell us about their studies.
- 5) What book...? → I read an English book every day.
- 6) What kind of...? → My father drives a new car.
- 7) How...? → He speaks English very well.
- 8) Where...? → My sister goes to her office on week-days.
- 9) How many...? → We have three classes on Monday.

## **II. Present Simple (Indefinite) Tense / Теперішній простий (неозначений) час.**

**Present Simple** використовується для вираження:

### **1. Звички**

*E.g. I get up at 7 o'clock.*

### **2. Загальновідомого факту**

*E.g. Vegetarians do not eat meat.*

### **3. Факту, вірного протягом довгого часу**

*E.g. She works in a bank.*

### **Схема речення:**

Стверджувальна форма	Питальна форма	Негативна (заперечна) форма
-------------------------	----------------	--------------------------------

I You <b>ask</b> every day We They	I <b>Do you ask</b> every day? we they	I You <b>do not ask</b> every day We <b>(don't)</b> They
He She <b>asks</b> every day It	he <b>Does she ask</b> every day? It	He She <b>does not ask</b> every day It <b>(doesn't)</b>

**Стверджувальна форма** утворюється за допомогою **інфінітива** без частки **to** для всіх осіб і чисел, крім третьої особи однини: *I live near here.*

**Питальна форма** утворюється з використанням **допоміжного** глаголи **do**:  
*Where do I live?*

**Негативна форма** утворюється з використанням допоміжного глагола **do** і негативної частки **not**: *I do not live near here.*

У **третій особі однини** до інфінітива і до допоміжного дієслова додається закінчення - **s (-es)**: *He speaks. Does he speak? He does not speak.*

Закінчення читається як [s] після глухих приголосних: *works, asks*

як [z] після дзвінких приголосних і голосних: *sounds, reads, tries*

як [ɪz] - після s, ss, sh, ch, tch, x: *dresses, watches.*

Можливі покажчики часу - обставини часу, такі як: *always, usually, often, seldom, sometimes, every day* і т.д.

### 2.1 Complete the sentences using one of the verbs in the box.

*cause(s) last(s) close(s) drink(s) live(s) leave(s) open(s) cure(s) speak(s)*  
*take(s) place bring(s)*

1) Ann ... German very well. 2) I never ... coffee. 3) The swimming pool ... at 9 o'clock and ... at 18.30 every day. 4) Bad driving ... many accidents. 5) My parents ... in a very small flat. 6) The Olympic Games ... every four years. 7) My father and I ... home at eight o'clock. 8) Time ... all things. 9) Each season of the year ... three months and ... changes in the year.

## 2.2. Open the brackets using the Present Simple.

1. Jane ... (*not/drink*) tea very often.
2. What time ... (*the banks/close*) in Britain?
3. "Where ... (*Martin/come*) from?" "He's Scottish."
4. "What ... (*you/do*)?" "I'm an electrical engineer."
5. It ... (*take*) me an hour to get to work. How long ... (*it/take*) you?
6. I ... (*play*) the piano but I ... (*not/play*) very well.
7. I don't understand this sentence. What ... (*this word/mean*)?
8. The next bus ... (*leave*) at exactly two o'clock.
9. ... (*you/ever/sleep*) past noon?

## 2.3. Complete the sentences using one of the verbs in the box. Some verbs are in the negative form.

<i>believe   eat   flow   go   grow   make   rise   tell   translate</i>
--

- 1) The sun ... round the earth. 2) Rice ... in Britain. 3) The sun ... in the east. 4) Bees ... honey. 5) Vegetarians... meat. 6) An atheist ... in God. 7) An interpreter ... from one language into another. 8) A liar is someone who ... the truth. 9) The River Amazon ... into the Atlantic Ocean.
7. Perhaps Liz studies languages. You want to know. Ask her.

## \*2. 4 Write in the verbs in the correct form.

1. I (to go) to the university by bus.
2. It (to take) me 15 minutes to get there.
3. She (to play) tennis on Sundays.
4. You (to cook) well?
5. We (to have) English twice a week.
6. They not (to eat) meat, they are vegetarians.
7. Ann not (to use) the dictionary while translating.
8. They (to study) five days a week.

## 2.5 Ask general questions. Give negative answers. Work in pairs.

*Model: He always gives her presents.*

*Does he always give her presents? - No, he doesn't. He doesn't give her presents.*

1. They speak French very well.
2. He goes in for sports every week.
3. She has a modern computer.
4. My sister calls me Dan.
5. They know many English songs.
6. He likes modern art.
7. My friends often visit museums.
8. We send letters to our

friends. 9. I try to keep fit. 10. My dog likes cats. 11. This watch goes. 12. We have an English lesson three times a week.

**\*2.6 Find and correct one mistake in each sentence.**

1. She buies bananas every week. 2. Their children do go to school every morning. 3. She watchs TV every week. 4. Your sister relax every week. 5. We cook often pizza. 6. Ann and Pete goes to work every day. 7. My mother haves three children. 8. He studys German at school.

**2.7 Translate into English.**

1. Пет вивчає німецьку мову в школі. 2. Його діти рідко ходять до музеїв. 3. Я не люблю дивитися телевізор ввечерами. 4. Ми подорожуємо до Туреччини (Turkey) щороку. 5. Вони часто слухають популярну музику? 6. Я добре граю в бас-кетбол. 7. Ти отримуєш стипендію? 8. Він не говорить по-іспанськи. 9. Мої друзі живуть в гуртожитку.

**2.8 Write the following sentences in the 3rd person singular.**

1. I think I am ill. 2. They often visit their granny. 3. We live in Leeds. 4. You usually speak too quickly. 5. Do you like boiled potatoes? 6. Good animals always obey their masters. 7. The boys box in the gymnasium on Fridays. 8. His dogs always attack the neighbours. 9. Heavy trucks make a lot of noise.

**2.9 Make up the sentences.**

1. university, Ann, goes, to, nine, at  
 2. husband, work, and, at, I, my, plant, a  
 3. not, go, to the Institute, Sundays, student, on, do  
 4. Nick, at, does, University, study, the (?)  
 5. our, receive, the best, scholarships, students, University, of

**2.10 Put the verb in brackets into the Present Simple.**

1. In England the traffic (keep) to the left but on the Continent it (keep) to the right. 2. They often (come) to see me in my town house 3. Jane (to be) fond of sports. She (to do) her morning exercises every day. 4. For breakfast she (to have) two eggs, a sandwich and a cup of tea. 5. After breakfast she (to go) to school. 6. My father



(like) a lot of milk in his tea and a few lumps of sugar. 7. We usually (spend) our holidays in Spain. 8. My English friends (live) in a nice house that (stand) on a hill that (overlook) lake Windermere, which (be) in the Lake District. 9. What this sentence (mean)? 10.1 (live) in Kiev, which (be) my native town. 11. My brother (sing) in Italian opera.

**\*2.11 Translate the sentences into English using the Present Simple Tense.**

1. В Одесі багато студентів. 2. Вони вчаться в інститутах і університетах. 3. Студенти університету дуже багато займаються (to work hard). 4. По неділях ми не працюємо, а діти не ходять до школи. 5. Він завжди відвідує нас, коли буває в Києві. 6. Скільки часу ви витрачаєте на дорогу додому?- Як правило, я витрачаю на дорогу додому близько тридцяти хвилин. 7. Він тепер рідко подорожує. 8. Ви часто ходите в кіно? 9. Вона ніколи не спізнюється. Вона завжди приходить вчасно. 10. Ви відчуваєте що-небудь? - Ні, я нічого не відчуваю. 11. Його батько інженер. Він будує мости.

**\*\*2.12 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form, complete the text and tell about your hobby.**

A hobby (to be) a regular activity or interest that is undertaken for pleasure. Examples of hobbies (to include) collecting stamps or coins, cooking, knitting, dancing etc. Some people (to like) to stay indoors and do things that (not to involve) physical activity: they read detective or love stories, watch TV-programs or play computer games; the latter are called mouse-potatoes.

The others (to prefer) outdoor activities such as hiking, sailing, rock climbing, fishing, hunting. Some hobbies (to result) in an end product and are considered creative hobbies. Examples of this would be woodworking, painting, photography, sewing. In Britain walking and gardening (to be) very popular. As for me, I prefer these activities: ...

**III. Past Simple (Indefinite) Tense / Минулий простий (неозначений) час.**

**Past Simple** використовується для вираження:

1. Дії в минулому: *The police stopped me on my way home last night.*
2. Послідовних дій в минулому: *He came home and switched on TV.*
3. Повторюваних дій в минулому: *He went out every day.*

**Схема речення:**

Стверджувальна форма +	I, You, He, She, It <b>visited/went</b> yesterday We, They
Питальна форма ?	I, you <b>Did</b> he, she, it <b>visit/go</b> yesterday ? we, they
Заперечна (негативна) форма -	I, You He, She ,It <b>did not visit/go</b> yesterday We, They <b>(didn't)</b>

**Past Simple** утворюється за допомогою закінчення **ed**, яке додається до основи **правильних** дієслів, або другої форми **неправильних** дієслів (таб...). Негативна і питальна форми утворюються за допомогою допоміжного дієслова **did** і початкової форми основного дієслова.

**Будьте уважні!**

1. Коли присудок виражено дієсловом **to be - was / were**, то це дієслово самостійно утворює питальну та негативну форми:

+	<i>I <b>was</b> tired because I worked much.</i>
?	<i>Why <b>were</b> you tired?</i>
-	<i>He <b>wasn't</b> there last week.</i>

2. Коли присудок виражено дієсловом **do**, негативна і питальна форми утворюються за загальними правилами: *What did you do at the weekend? They did not do any exercises yesterday.*

Можливі показники часу - обставини часу, такі як: *yesterday, last week, 2 years ago, in 1973* і т.д.

### 3.1 Complete the sentences using one of the verbs in the box.

<i>buy catch cost drink fall hurt sell spend teach throw win write</i>
--

*E.g. Mozart wrote more than 600 pieces of music.*

1. "How did you learn to drive?" "My father ... me." 2. We couldn't afford to keep our car, so we ... it. 3. I was very thirsty. I ... the water very quickly. 4. Paul and I played tennis yesterday. He's much better than me, so he ... easily. 5. Don ... down the stairs this morning and ... his leg. 6. Jim ... the ball to Sue, who ... it. 7. Ann ... a lot of money yesterday. She ... a dress which ... £100.

### 3.2 One of your friends returned from holidays. Ask him for more details.

*E.g. (where/go?) — Where did you go?*

- |                           |                                |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. (go alone?)            | 5. (how/travel?)               |
| 2. (food/good?)           | 6. (the weather/fine?)         |
| 3. (how long/stay there?) | 7. (what/do in the evenings?)  |
| 4. (stay / at a hotel?)   | 8. (meet anybody interesting?) |

### 3.3 Open the brackets using the Past Simple.

*E.g. It was warm, so I took off my coat. (take) The film wasn't very good. I didn't enjoy it very much. (enjoy)*

1. I knew Sarah was very busy, so I ... her. (*disturb*) 2. I was very tired, so I ... to bed early. (*go*) 3. The bed was very uncomfortable. I ... very well. (*sleep*) 4. Sue wasn't hungry, so she ... anything. (*eat*). 5. We went to Kate's house but she ... at home. (*be*). 6. It was a funny situation but nobody ... . (*laugh*). 7. The window was open and a bird ... into the room. (*fly*). 8. The hotel wasn't very expensive. It ... very much. (*cost*) 9. I was in a hurry, so I ... time to phone you. (*have*). 10. It was hard work to carry the bags. They ... very heavy. (*be*).

### 3.4 Read the Past Simple forms according to the pronunciation.

[t]

[d]

[id]

passed	changed	graduated
forced	entered	started
liked	loved	studied
worked	lived	lasted
watched	controlled	attended

### ***3.5 Form the Past Simple of these regular and irregular verbs.***

- 1) to order, to clean, to ask, to answer, to decide, to discuss, to miss;
- 2) to stand, to take, to read, to write, to see, to go, to put, to leave, to do, to have, to find, to know, to teach, to lose, to get, to come, to think, to speak.

### ***3.6 Ask your neighbour if he/she:***

- a) entered the Technical University last summer;
- b) studied German at school;
- c) made a good report at the seminar;
- d) visited a foreign country last year;
- e) attended the lecture in History;
- f) went to the theatre two days ago;
- g) was late for classes yesterday;
- h) played volleyball last Friday;
- i) had lunch at the student canteen;
- j) missed the classes the day before yesterday.

### ***\*3.7 Ask special questions to the underlined words.***

1. We had breakfast at the student canteen.
2. He wanted to go to Ternopyl during the holidays.
3. Our English class began at 10 o'clock.
4. Last night I got a letter from my parents.
5. My sister read some English books.
6. My friend passed all the exams successfully.
7. They discussed important problems at the seminar.
8. We were late for classes yesterday.
9. She made a good report at the seminar.

### ***\*\*3.8 Write the verbs in the past***

On Monday I get up at seven. I go to the bathroom and wash my hands and face and clean my teeth. Then I dress, go to the kitchen and cook breakfast for my

family. At half past seven my son gets up and has breakfast. I have breakfast with my son. My daughter eats a sandwich and drinks a cup of tea. I don't drink tea. I drink coffee. After breakfast my daughter leaves home for school. I don't leave home with my daughter. On Monday I don't work in the morning. I work in the afternoon. In the evening I am at home. My husband and my daughter are at home, too. We rest in the evening. My daughter watches TV, my husband reads newspapers and I do some work about the house. At about eleven o'clock I go to bed.

**3.9 Complete the sentences with the Past Simple verbs.**

1. The boys (whisper) secrets to each other.
2. Uncle Ben (hurry) to catch his bus.
3. We (return) our books to the library.
4. She (kiss) the frog and it (change) into a prince.
5. Someone (tap) me on the shoulder.
6. The baby (cry) when we took her toy away.
7. John (pin) the badge onto his jacket.
8. Two doctors (rush) into the room.
9. This is the house that we (live) in when I was younger.
10. Grandad (lower) himself into the chair.

**3.10 Underline the correct past tense verb in each sentence below.**

1. I (losed / lost) my watch in the park.
2. David (hurt / hurted) his knee when he (falled / fell).
3. I kicked the ball hard and it (brealed / broke) a window.
4. My new shoes (cost / costed) a lot of money.
5. I (getted / got) this book from the library.
6. We had a garage where we (keeped / kept) our car.
7. Ali (shew / showed) me the cut on his knee.
8. The glass (falled / fell) off the table and (brealed / broke).
9. We (selled / sold) our old car and (buyed / bought) a new one.

10. The bell (ringed / rang) and we all (goed / went) into school.
11. The dog (catched / caught) the ball in its mouth.
12. The man (kneeled / knelt) down to talk to the little boy.
13. I (meeted / met) my friend in the park.
14. Our cat (runned / ran) onto the road in front of a car.
15. Jane (writed / wrote) a letter to her best friend.

***3.11 Put the verbs in the following sentences in the affirmative, interrogative, and negative forms of Past Simple.***

1. I (to do) morning exercises.
2. He ( not to work) at a factory.
3. She (to sleep) after dinner?
4. We (to work) part-time.
5. They ( not to drink) tea yesterday.
6. Mike (to be) a student.
7. Helen (to have) a car?

***3.12 Open the brackets using the Past Simple..***

1. Alice (to meet) her sister.
2. Her sister's name (to be) Ann.
3. She (to get) up at seven o'clock?
4. She (not to go) to the institute in the morning.
5. Jane and her friend (to be) fond of sports.
6. She (to do) her morning exercises every day.
7. For breakfast she (to have) two eggs, a sandwich and a cup of tea.
8. After breakfast she (to read) books?
9. It (to take) her an hour and a half to do her homework.
10. She (not to speak) English well.
11. Her friends usually (to call) her at about 8 o'clock.
12. Ann (to understand) a question.
13. She (to feel) in love?

**3.13 Open the brackets using the Past Simple.**

1. My working day (to begin) at six o'clock.
2. I (to get) up, (to switch) on the TV and (to brush) my teeth.
3. It (to take) me about twenty minutes.
4. I (to have) breakfast at seven o'clock.
5. I (to leave) home at half past seven.
6. I (to take) a bus to the institute.

**3.14 Give the second form of the verbs.**

to meet-	to play-	to open-
to go-	to say-	to read-
to be-	to write-	to see-
to take-	to like-	to give-
to live-	to count-	to look-
to get-	to bring-	to tell-

**3.15 Make questions to the sentences.**

1. Mike went to England a month ago.  
a) Who? b) Where?
2. The boys played games out of doors last Sunday.  
a) Who? b) When?
3. The children stayed at the seaside for two weeks a year ago.  
a) Where? b) When?

**3.16 Translate into English**

1. Вчора я зустрів Тома в театрі.
2. Коли ви її бачили в останній раз? - Минулого четверга.
3. У минулому році ми не вивчали англійську мову. Ми вивчали німецьку.
4. О котрій годині ви закінчили працювати вчора? - Після обіду. У нас було багато роботи.
5. Погода була сонячна, і ми з друзями пішли в парк.
6. Вони почали цей експеримент минулого тижня.
7. Ми повернулися додому о 8 годині вечора.
8. Ми вирішили надіслати цього листа три дні тому.

9. Кому ви віддали ці журнали? - Я віддав їх своєму однокурсникові. 10. Хто сказав тобі правду? - Я дізнався її від твого брата.

**\*\*3.17 What did you do yesterday? Tell about your ordinary day. Use the Past Simple Tense (V+ed / V2) and the words “then, after that, as usual, as always”.**

get up at 7 o'clock; wash, dress and do one's hair; have breakfast; leave the house at ... o'clock; go by bus /on foot; (it) take smb. ... minutes; come on time / be late for classes; begin at 9.30 a.m.; have 2 lectures and a seminar; make a good report at the seminar; discuss important problems; be over at 3 p.m.; have dinner at the canteen; come home at 6 p.m.; work on computer till 8; prepare for the next day's classes; listen to music a little; take a shower / a bath; go to bed at ... o'clock.

#### **IV. Present Continuous (PROGRESSIVE) Tense/ Теперішній подовжений час.**

**Present Continuous** використовується для вираження:

- дії, що відбувається в даний момент: *They are playing football in the garden.*
- дії, що відбувається в даний час, але, можливо не в момент розмови: *She's studying maths at university.*
- заходу, запланованого на майбутнє: *I'm meeting Miss Bond at ten o'clock tomorrow.*

**Схема речення:**

Стверджувальна форма +	Питальна форма ?	Заперечна форма (негативна) -
I <b>am reading</b> now	<b>Am I reading</b> now?	I <b>am not reading</b> now
He She <b>is reading</b> now It	he <b>Is she reading</b> now? it	He She <b>is not reading</b> now It <b>(isn't)</b>



You	you	You
We <b>are reading</b> now	<b>Are</b> we <b>reading</b>	We <b>are not reading</b> now
They	now?	They ( <b>aren't</b> )
	they	

*Стверджувальна форма* утворюється з використанням **допоміжного** дієслова **to be** в теперішньому часі і **форми Participle I** основного (змістового) дієслова: *I am speaking. You are speaking. He is speaking.*

При утворенні питальної форми **допоміжне** дієслово ставиться **перед** підметом: *Is he speaking?*

При утворенні **негативної** форми між допоміжним і основним дієсловами ставиться **заперечення not**: *He is not (isn't) speaking.*

### **Правопис закінчення:**

- 1) Більшість дієслів додають закінчення безпосередньо до основи: *reading, standing.*
- 2) Якщо дієслово закінчується на **-e**, то ця літера відкидається при додаванні закінчення: *coming.*
- 3) Якщо дієслово складається з одного закритого складу з короткою голосною і закінчується на приголосну, то кінцевий приголосний при додаванні закінчення удвоюється: *planning, spinning.*
- 4) У односкладових словах з голосним **i** в корені, **i** змінюється на **y**: *die - dying, lie - lying.*

### **Примітка:**

Англійські дієслова, пов'язані зі сприйняттям (*notice, hear, see, feel ...*), емоціями (*love, hate, like ...*), процесами розумової діяльності (*think, believe, understand ...*), володінням (*have, possess ...*) **не використовуються** в часах групи Continuous, тому що вони самі по собі позначають процес. Замість них використовується час *Present Simple*:

*I hear you, do not shout.* - Я чую тебе, не кричи.

Можливі показники часу - обставини часу, такі як: *now, at present, at the moment* та інші.

#### 4.1 Complete the sentences using one of the verbs in the box.

<i>come</i>	<i>get</i>	<i>happen</i>	<i>look</i>	<i>make</i>	<i>start</i>	<i>stay</i>	<i>try</i>	<i>work</i>
-------------	------------	---------------	-------------	-------------	--------------	-------------	------------	-------------

- 1) "You ... hard today." "Yes, I have a lot to do." 2) I ... for Christine. Do you know where she is? 3) It ... dark. Shall I turn on the light?
- 4) They haven't got anywhere to live at the moment. They ... with friends until they find somewhere. 5) "Are you ready, Ann?" "Yes, I ..."
- 6) Have you got an umbrella? It ... to rain. 7) You ... a lot of noise. Could you be quieter? I ... to concentrate. 8) Why are all these people here? What ...?

#### 4.2 Open the brackets using the Present Continuous Tense.

1. "... this week?" "No, he's on holiday." (*Colin/work*)
2. Why ... at me like that? What's the matter? (*you/look*)
3. "Jenny is a student at university." "Is she? What ...?" (*she/study*)
4. ... to the radio or can I turn it off? (*anybody/listen*)
5. How is your English? ... better? (*it/get*)
6. Do you know that man? Why ... at you? (*he/smile*)

#### 4.3 Complete the sentences. Some verbs are in the negative form.

(**I'm not doing etc.**)

1. I'm tired. I ... (*go*) to bed now. Goodnight!
2. We can go out now. It ... (*rain*) any more.
3. "How is your new job?" "Not so good at the moment. I ... (*enjoy*) it very much."
4. Catherine phoned me last night. She's on holiday in France. She ... (*have*) a great time and doesn't want to come back.
5. I want to lose weight, so this week I ... (*eat*) lunch.
6. Angela has just started evening classes. She ... (*learn*) German.
7. I think Paul and Ann have had an argument. They ... (*speak*) to each other.

**4.4 Complete the sentences using one of the verbs in the box. Some verbs are used not only once, some aren't used at all.**

get	change	rise	fall	increase
-----	--------	------	------	----------

1) The population of the world ... very fast. 2) Ken is still ill but he ... better slowly. 3) The world ... . Things never stay the same. 4) The cost of living ... . Every year things are more expensive. 5) The economic situation is already very bad and it ... worse.

**4.5 Put the verbs into the Present Continuous Tense.**

1. What your sister (to do) now? – She (to wash) the dishes. 2. He (to work) in the centre of the city at the moment. 3. We (not to dance) every day. 4. They (to play) in the room now? 5. He (to sleep) now? 6. They (to read) many books. 7. The children (to eat) soup now. 8. Look! Kate (to dance) now. 9. His father (not to watch) TV at the moment. He (to sleep) because he (to be) tired. 10. Your friend (to do) his homework now?

**4.6 Answer the questions using the words in brackets.**

*Example: Are you drawing? (write a story)- No. I'm not. I'm writing a story.*

1. Is he writing a letter? (watch television)
2. Are you reading Byron's poems? (learn them by heart)
3. Is Dad smoking in his study? (read a newspaper)
4. Are they listening to the radio? (talk with a friend)
5. Are you hurrying to work? (go home)
6. Is Joan playing the piano? (listen to a concert)
7. Are you working at your essay? (write a film script)
8. Is she washing up? (cook)

**4.7 Translate into English.**

1. На кого ви зараз дивитесь? - Я дивлюся на цю молоду леді. 2. Що пише Ваш друг? - Він пише нову статтю. 3. Про що ви розповідаєте своїм друзям? - Я розповідаю їм про свою відпустку. 4. Ви зараз пишете диктант? -Ні, ми робимо вправу 5. Ці студенти роблять вправу або переписують текст? 6. Кого

зустрічають ці студенти? - Вони зустрічають іноземних друзів. 7. Куди ви йдете? Я йду на фотовиставку. 8. Що ви обговорюєте? - Ми обговорюємо новий фільм. 9. Де він чекає її? - Я думаю, біля університету. 10. Хто читає цю лекцію? - Професор Оксфордського університету читає цю лекцію.

## V. Past Continuous (PROGRESSIVE) Tense / Минулий подовжений час.

**Past Continuous** (минулий продовжений час) використовується для вираження:

- дії, що відбувалася в певний момент у минулому, яка позначається або обставиною часу, або іншею дією в минулому. При цьому ні початок, ні кінець дії не відомі: *What were you doing at ten o'clock yesterday? I was writing a letter when you came.*
- тривалої дії, що відбувалася в певний період часу в минулому (*from six to seven, the whole day yesterday i m.ò.*): *It was raining the whole day yesterday.*
- одночасних дій, що відбувалися в минулому в один і той же момент: *The children were playing in the garden while their mother was cooking dinner.*

### Схема речення:

Стверджувальна форма +	I He, She, It <b>was reading</b> when he came
	You We <b>were reading</b> when he came They
Питальна форма ?	I <b>Was</b> he, she, it <b>reading</b> when he came ?
	you <b>Were</b> we <b>reading</b> when he came ? they

Заперечна (негативна) форма -	I (wasn't)
	He, She, It <b>was not reading</b> when he came
	You
	We <b>were reading</b> when he came
	They (weren't)

**Past Continuous** утворюється з використанням допоміжного дієслова *was / were* і дієприкметника теперішнього часу (*Participle I*) основного дієслова. У питальних реченнях допоміжне дієслово ставиться перед підметом. У заперечних реченнях перед основним дієсловом ставиться частка **not**.

Можливі покажчики часу - *at 7 o'clock, at that moment, then* і т.д. Підрядні речення з **Past Continuous** зазвичай вводяться сполучником **while** (в той час як), а так само **when** (коли).

**5.1. Anna and Peter passed the exam yesterday. Anna passed successfully and Peter did not. What was Peter doing yesterday while Anna was preparing for the exam? Write the sentences in the Past Continuous.**

*E.g. Ann/ work/ in the library/ Pete/ listen/ to/ the records — While Ann was working at the library, Pete was listening to the records.*

1. Ann/ revise for an exam/ Pete/ walk along the streets.
2. She/ read a textbook/ Pete/play/ computer games.
3. Ann/ learn the terms/ Pete and his friends/ play football.
4. Ann/ gather information for a report/ Pete and his girl friend/ sit in a café.
5. She/ do sums/ he/ sleep.

**5.2. Mr Brown returned early yesterday. Make up the sentences in the Past Continuous about what his family was doing when he returned.**

*When father came home yesterday...*

*E.g. Robert/not sit at home/take the dog for a walk. — Robert wasn't sitting at home. He was taking the dog for a walk.*

1. Jane/ not watch a film on TV/ clear up the mess.

2. The twins/ not listen to music/ do the washing up.
3. His wife/ not cook a meal/ read magazines.
4. Granny/ not talk to her friend/ have a shower.
5. Amy/ not put on make-up/ try on a new dress.

**5.3 Complete the sentences at the Past Continuous.**

1. Tom burnt his hand while he ...
2. The doorbell rang while I...
3. We saw an accident while we ...
4. Mary fell asleep while she ...
5. The television was on but nobody ...

**5.4 Ask questions to the underlined words.**

*E.g. Mr. Smith is speaking on the phone in his office now. — **Where is Mr. Smith speaking on the phone now?***

1. Everyone was having a good time when suddenly forty uninvited guests arrived.
2. These paintings belong to somebody.
3. She is writing an essay at the moment.
4. We have our English classes three times a week.
5. I went to the shop to buy some coffee.
6. Yuet Tung came to the USA from Hong Kong.
7. She likes cooking.
8. James can speak four languages.

**5.5 Put the verb into the Past Continuous.**

1. They (to write) the test at this time yesterday.
2. He (to work) in the garden from two till five o'clock.
3. We (to watch) television the whole evening.
4. You (to play) football at six o'clock?
5. You (to drink) tea at seven o'clock?
6. He (to draw) from three till four o'clock?
7. Who (to listen) to the radio at this time?

8. It (to rain) the whole day yesterday?
9. They (to skate) at three o'clock?
10. She (not to help) mother about the house from two till six.

### **5.6 Make up the sentences using the Past Continuous Tense.**

- 1) We/to plant/the trees/all morning/yesterday.
- 2) Frank/ to work/in the garage/from 2 till 5 o'clock last Saturday.
- 3) Children/to train/in the gym/at 7 o'clock yesterday.
- 4) It/ to snow/heavily/all the day/last Monday.
- 5) At 11 o'clock yesterday morning/Mr Brooks and his son/to wash/the car.
- 6) Nelly/to talk/on the phone/at 3 o'clock yesterday.
- 7) Some girls/to play/tennis/at this time/yesterday.
- 8) You/to have/ lunch/from 1 till 2 o'clock last Wednesday.
- 9) Some workers/to load/the boxes/into the lorry/at that time,
- 10) Alice/to clean/ the flat/a 11 the afternoon/yesterday.

## **VI. Present Simple and Present Continuous**

1. **Present Simple** передає постійні дії, а **Present Continuous** тимчасові:

*E.g. Do you wear a uniform at work?*

*Why are you wearing that funny hat?*

*E.g. I live in London.*

*I am staying with my friends until I find a flat.*

2. **Present Simple** говорить про те, що відбувається взагалі, а **Present Continuous** передає ситуації, що відбуваються в даний момент:

*E.g. Water boils at 100 degrees Celsius.*

*The water is boiling. Can you turn it off?*

*What do you do? (What's your job?)*

*What are you doing? (at the moment)*

3. **Present Continuous** використовується тільки з дієсловами, що позначають дію. Існує ряд дієслів, які дії не позначають:

*like love hate want need prefer know be  
realize suppose mean understand believe  
recognize remember belong contain consist  
depend seem*

**Present Continuous** також зазвичай не вживається з дієсловами, що позначають почуття:

*see hear smell taste feel*

Два дієслова потрібно **запам'ятати особливо**:

**To think** вживається в **Continuous** якщо він позначає роздуми: *What are you thinking about?* і не вживається, якщо мається на увазі думка людини: *What do you think of that man?*

**To have** не вживається в **Continuous**, якщо він використовується в своєму основному значенні «мати, володіти»: *We have a lovely house.*

**To have** може вживатися в **Continuous** в складі стійких виразів, таких як **have dinner, have a shower**, і таке інше: *We are having a great time. We are having dinner.*

**6.1 Open the brackets by putting the verbs in the correct form and the adverbs in the correct place in the sentence.**

1. I ... (*not/like*) getting up in the morning. 2. My brother and I ... (*get*) up quite early to come to school on time. 3. Our father ... (*sometimes/drive*) us, but on other days we ... (*get*) the school by bus. 4. We almost ... (*never/get*) to the bus stop on time and the bus ... (*always/wait*) when we turn the corner. 5. The bus driver ... (*tell*) us to hurry up and we ... (*jump on*) the bus. 6. We ... (*not/go*) to school next Monday because it's a holiday. 7. Instead all the people from my class ... (*meet*) in



the mountains for a picnic. 8. I ... (*make*) a chocolate cake, my friend Joanna ... (*bring*) a salad and the others ... (*bring*) meat, bread and soft drinks. 9. Joanna ... (*ring*) me up every evening and asks, "What we ... (*have*) to do for homework?" 10. She ... (*not/listen*) when the teacher ... (*give*) us our homework. 11. When Joanna ... (*ring*) me up, she ... (*always/say*) "What you ... (*do*)?" 12. And I ... (*answer*) "I ... (*talk*) to you, silly!"

**6.2 Open the brackets by putting the verbs in the correct form (Present Simple or Present Continuous).**

1. Vegetarians are people who (*don't eat / are not eating*) meat.
2. Some people still think the sun (*goes / is going*) round the earth.
3. What (*happens / is happening*) in golf if you lose the ball?
4. Look! (*She wears / She's wearing*) the same shoes as me.
5. "What (*are you looking / do you look*) at?" "A strange bird."
6. We (*usually stay / 're usually staying*) with Peggy when we go to Chicago.
7. What (*do you do / are you doing*) with my coat?
8. Nobody (*gets / is getting*) up early for fun.

**6.3 Match the questions and answers.**

1. What do you do?	a. Actually, that's the radio.
2. What are you doing?	b. French - she's from Belgium.
3. Where do you work?	c. I want to get this car started.
4. Where are you working?	d. I'm an architect.
5. Does your son play the violin?	e. I'm in Cardiff this week.
6. Is your son playing the violin?	f. In a big insurance company.
7. What language does she speak?	g. It sounds like Ukrainian.
8. What language is she speaking?	h. Me - can I have some more?
9. Who's drinking champagne?	i. Me. When I can afford it.
10. Who drinks champagne?	j. No. The piano.

**6.4 Open the brackets by putting the verbs in the correct form (Present Simple or Present Continuous).**

1. I \_\_ (play) cricket right now.
2. I \_\_ (play) cricket on Saturdays.
3. Silvia \_\_ (cook) in the kitchen now.
4. Silvia \_\_ (cook) for her father on Sundays.
5. Maila \_\_ (like) Chinese food.
6. Keep silent, Manolo \_\_ (read) a book.
7. Erik \_\_ (love) María.
8. Ann \_\_ (jog) in the park today.
9. George \_\_ (want) to go outside.
10. Barbara \_\_ (eat) chicken wings at the moment.
11. What \_\_ you \_\_ (do)? I'm sleeping.
12. How many languages \_\_ you \_\_ (speak)?
13. I \_\_ (not like) politics.
14. What \_\_ you \_\_ (do) at the moment?
15. Where \_\_ you \_\_ (live)?
16. I \_\_ (want) to be a millionaire.
17. Nacho \_\_ (not wear) a tie today.
18. Jesus is in Amsterdam this week. He \_\_ (stay) at the Hilton.
19. Look! Miguel \_\_ (jump) into the water.
20. Lili is rich, she \_\_ (drive) a Mercedes.
21. Once a week, I \_\_ (go) to my yoga lessons.
22. I \_\_ (think) you're amazing.
23. Bea sometimes \_\_ (read) comics.
24. We never \_\_ (watch) TV in the morning.
25. Listen! Blanca \_\_ (sing) in the bathroom.

**6.5 Open the brackets by putting the verbs in the correct form (Present Simple or Present Continuous).**

1. Look! The boys \_\_ (come) home.
2. Every day Ayla \_\_ (go) for a walk.

3. Sofía usually \_\_\_ (help) in the kitchen.
4. Bob \_\_\_ (make) breakfast now.
5. I \_\_\_ (chat) with my sister at the moment.
6. It never \_\_\_ (rain) in Valencia.
7. Don't bother me now. I \_\_\_ (work).
8. They \_\_\_ (swim) at the moment.
9. I \_\_\_ (play) chess with my friend.
10. Look! He \_\_\_ (leave) the house.
11. Quiet please! I \_\_\_ (write) a letter.
12. I \_\_\_ (not do) anything at the moment.
13. \_\_\_ he \_\_\_ (watch) the news regularly.
14. I \_\_\_ (work) as an accountant.
15. Eli \_\_\_ (work) eight hours a day.
16. I \_\_\_ (know) him very well.
17. My wife \_\_\_ (have) coffee at the moment.
18. \_\_\_ you \_\_\_ (meet) your friend now?
19. Sandra \_\_\_ (work) on her project at the moment.
20. \_\_\_ Milie \_\_\_ (work) in a restaurant?
21. He \_\_\_ (wear) a T-shirt and shorts today.
22. Carlos \_\_\_ (like) fruits and vegetables.
23. Cristina \_\_\_ (have) long blond hair.
24. What's that noise? Someone \_\_\_ (play) the piano.
25. She often \_\_\_ (talk) to herself.

**6.6 Open the brackets by putting the verbs in the correct form (Present Simple or Present Continuous).**

1. Every Monday, Sally (drive) \_\_\_ her kids to football practice.
2. Usually, I (work) \_\_\_ as a secretary at ABT, but this summer I (study) \_\_\_ French at a language school in Paris. That is why I am in Paris.
3. Shhhhh! Be quiet! John (sleep) \_\_\_.

4. Don't forget to take your umbrella. It (rain) \_\_\_.
5. I hate living in Seattle because it (rain, always) \_\_\_.
6. I'm sorry I can't hear what you (say) \_\_\_ because everybody (talk) \_\_\_ so loudly.
7. Justin (write, currently) \_\_\_ a book about his adventures in Tibet. I hope he can find a good publisher when he is finished.
8. Jim: Do you want to come over for dinner tonight?  
Denise: Oh, I'm sorry, I can't. I (go) \_\_\_ to a movie tonight with some friends.
9. The business cards (be, normally) \_\_\_ printed by a company in Kiev. Their prices (be) \_\_\_ inexpensive, yet the quality of their work is quite good.
10. This delicious chocolate (be) \_\_\_ made by a small chocolatier in Ukraine.

**6.7 Put the verbs in brackets at the correct time (Present Simple or Present Continuous.)**

1. Give Ben lots of apples. He (like) them.
2. It's quiet because the children (stay) with their grandmother.
3. I'm sorry, he can't come to phone. He (cook) dinner.
4. — You (hear) anything? — I (listen) hard, but I (hear) nothing.
5. They (need) money to buy a car.

**6.8 Begin the questions with do, does, is, are or am.**

1. .... you listening to me?
2. .... you hear me well?
3. ... this lesson very difficult to you?
4. ... you remember the title of that book?
5. ... you understand all of the words very well?

**\*6.9 Find the errors and fix them.**

1. She speak French very well.
2. I'm taking my umbrella because is raining.
3. I am hating hot milk.
4. Are you understanding this rule now?
5. I am liking tea.
6. He is speaking three languages.
7. I'm so dirty. I am need a bath now.
8. He is having a flat in the center.
9. Peter is in the kitchen. He cooks breakfast for the family.

**6.10 Translate into English.**

1. На сніданок я їм кашу. Але я не люблю кашу.
2. Том грає в футбол щонеділі.
3. Поспішай, автобус йде.
4. Ми живемо в Одесі.
5. Сім'я Смітів зараз проживає в готелі.
6. Я вчу англійську мову.
7. Я зараз читаю книгу. (Не заважай мені.)
8. Я чищу зуби щоранку.
9. Що робиш? - Я малюю.
10. Я вас не розумію.
11. Мій брат чекає мене внизу.
12. Хто плаче? - Моя сестра плаче.
13. Джейн добре співає. Чуєш? Вона співає зараз.
14. Хтось йде сюди. Я чую кроки (it).
15. Де ти купуєш хліб?

### ***6.11 Translate into English.***

1. - Де Вадим? - Він грає в теніс. 2. - Він добре грає в теніс? - Ні, він грає в теніс погано. 3. Я не знаю людини, яка (who) розмовляє з моєю мамою. 4. Я часто розмовляю з моїм другом про нашу поїздку. 5. Андрій співає дуже добре. 6. Слухайте. Хтось співає у сусідній кімнаті. 7. Він не бачить, що я на нього дивлюся. Він читає книгу. 8. Зателефонуйте йому зараз. Я думаю, що він не спить. 9. Подивіться на людину, яка стоїть біля вікна. Це мій вчитель англійської мови. 10. Джон на вулиці (outside). Він має машину.

## **VII.Past Simple and Past Continuous**

**1. Past Simple** описує факти: Mozart was an Austrian composer.

**2. Past Continuous** описує дію в розвитку, яке може бути перервано: *I was walking home when I met Dave.*

3. **Past Continuous** описує сцену, а **Past Simple** дію: *When I woke up in the morning the sun was shining, the birds were singing.*

4. **Past Continuous** описує те, що було раніше, а **Past Simple** те, що сталося після: *I was walking home when I saw Dave. So I stopped and we had a chat.*

5. **Past Simple** описує постійні ситуації, а **Past Continuous** тимчасові: *My head was aching, so I went home. When I was a child I played the violin.*

### **7.1 Open the brackets by putting the verbs in the correct form (Past Simple, Past Continuous).**

Last night a friend of mine ... (1. *celebrate*) his birthday. When I ... (2. *arrive*), I ... (3. *see*) that his flat ... (4. *be*) full of guests. I ... (5. *enter*) the sitting room. Some boys and girls ... (6. *dance*). Several guests ... (7. *sing*) a merry song and the host ... (8. *play*) the piano. A group of girls ... (9. *listen*) to music and other people ... (10. *watch*) television. The guests ... (11. *enjoy*) the feast when I left. I had a very good time last night.

### **7.2 Open the brackets by putting the verbs in the correct form (Past Simple, Past Continuous).**

1. ... you ... (go) shopping last Saturday? — Yes, I ... and I (buy) all the things you told me to buy. 2. Jane ... (do) shopping while I ... (do) the room. 3. ... you ... (play) football yesterday? — No, we ... not. It ... (rain). 4. We ... (play) football when a thunderstorm ... (begin).

5. When I ... (take) the dog out yesterday evening, I ... (meet) an old friend of mine. He ... (hurry) to his sports club.

6. When ... your brother (come) home last Thursday? — He ... (not come) on Thursday. He ... (stay) in the country.

7. When my brother ... (come) home at 7 o'clock last Thursday he ... (fall) down and (break) his leg.

8. ... you (visit) your grandma last week? — No, I ... not. I ... (prepare) for my exam.

9. We ... (*stay*) with our grandma when her American guests (*arrive*).

**7.3 Open the brackets by putting the verbs in the correct form (Past Simple, Past Continuous).**

*E.g. Jane was waiting (wait) for me when I arrived (arrive).*

1. "What ... (*you/do*) this time yesterday?" "I was asleep."
2. "... (*you/go*) out last night?" "No, I was too tired."
3. "Was Carol at the party last night?" "Yes, she ... (*wear*) a really nice dress."
4. How fast ... (*you/drive*) when the accident ... (*happen*)?
5. John ... (*take*) a photograph of me while I ... (*not/look*).
6. We were in a very difficult position. We ... (*not/know*) what to do.
7. I haven't seen Alan for ages. When I last ... (*see*) him, he ... (*try*) to find a job in London.
8. I ... (*walk*) along the street when suddenly I ... (*hear*) footsteps behind me. Somebody ... (*follow*) me. I was frightened and I ... (*start*) to run.
9. When I was young, I ... (*want*) to be a bus driver.

**7.4 Open the brackets by putting the verbs in the correct form (Past Simple, Past Continuous).**

1. I (*be*) in a hurry now. My friends (*wait*) for me.
2. You (*be*) at the theatre yesterday. You (*like*) the opera? — Oh yes, I (*enjoy*) it greatly.
3. What you (*do*) in your spare time? Have you got any hobbies?
4. Mary usually (*phone*) me on Sundays but she (*not/phone*) last Sunday.
5. What (*be*) the matter with her? She (*be*) so excited. — I (*not/know*).
6. What's the noise? What (*happen*)?
7. It (*be*) usually dry here at this time of the year. It (*not/rain*) much.
8. When I first (*tell*) Tom the news, he (*not/believe*) me. He thought it (*be*) a joke.

**7.5 Fill in the gaps as in the model.**

*Model: A year ago I enjoyed tennis but I ... swimming.*

*A year ago I enjoyed tennis but I didn't enjoy swimming.*

1. We learnt English at school but we ... German.
2. They went to the USA last year but they ... to England.
3. We saw Jack yesterday but we ... his brother.
4. At

the party she ate an orange but she ... an apple. 5. He taught physics at the University but he ... mathematics. 6. We met Boris two days ago but we ... Ann. 7. Last week we took a credit-test but we ... an exam.

**7.6 Choose the correct verb form (Past Simple or Past Continuous) to complete the sentences.**

1. The film was rubbish, so we left / were leaving the cinema and went / were going to the cybercafé.
2. I didn't like / wasn't liking the program we watched / were watching, so I turned / was turning off the TV.
3. Dave rang / was ringing me while I did / was doing my homework.
4. As I fell / was falling asleep, I heard/was hearing a strange noise.
5. I dropped / was dropping my keys while I ran / was running for the bus.
6. The competition judges didn't know / weren't knowing whose food they tasted / were tasting.

**7.7 Complete the email with the Past Simple or Past Continuous of these verbs. You will need to use some verbs more than once.**

Decide / get / give / go / happen / not hurt / play / try / want
--

Last weekend Ben and I visited that new leisure center that everyone is talking about. We 1) \_\_\_\_\_ to the ice-skating rink first. Ben slipped a few times while he 2) \_\_\_\_\_ to do acrobatic tricks, but luckily he 3) \_\_\_\_\_ himself. After that, we went to the main hall to see what 4) \_\_\_\_\_ there. On one side of the hall a rock band 5) \_\_\_\_\_ while on the other side some skateboarders 6) \_\_\_\_\_ a display. The Skateboarders were fantastic so we 7) \_\_\_\_\_ to stay and watch them.

After the exhibition, we both 8) \_\_\_\_\_ to go to the shops inside the center. But it was nearly rush hour and the shops 9) \_\_\_\_\_ really crowded so we 10) \_\_\_\_\_ to the multiplex cinema to see *The Illusionist*. What a fantastic film!



**\*7.8 Match the beginnings (1-7) with the endings (a-g). Then complete the sentences with the past simple or past continuous of the verbs in brackets.**

1. He _____ (climb) down the side of a building	a) while I _____ (have) a shower.
2. The sun _____ (shine) brightly	b) the band _____ (play) my favourite song.
3. The hot water tank _____ (explode)	c) when suddenly the rope _____ (break).
4. When we _____ (get) to the concert	d) and _____ (take up) sculpture instead.
5. I _____ (not know) that my friends	e) _____ (prepare) a surprise party for me.
6. While you _____ (lie) on the beach	f) when I _____ (get up) this morning.
7. Last year, Simon _____ (give up) painting	g) we _____ (study) for our exams!

**7.9 Put the verbs in the correct form (Past Simple, Past Continuous).**

- An amazing display of traditional-style canoes \_\_\_\_ last week in Portland (to open).
- Last month, we \_\_\_\_\_ the most amazing opportunity to head down to Nashville (to have).
- These ladies \_\_\_\_\_ an apartment when they \_\_\_\_ both \_\_\_\_\_ English in Jakarta, Indonesia (to share, to teach).
- Last year we \_\_\_\_\_ too tired even to make quality home design (to be).
- While the tourists \_\_\_\_\_ at the beach, animators \_\_\_\_\_ coffee in the bar (to dance, to have).
- Last time there \_\_\_\_\_ a snowfall in November in 2016 (to be).
- A Qatari sheikh \_\_\_\_\_ more than £1 billion on his art collection last year (to spend).

8. The hot-blooded and furious Tybalt \_\_\_\_\_ a grudge against Romeo (to bear).
9. While we \_\_\_\_\_ to a dive site we \_\_\_\_\_ the advantages of Utila, the smallest and most unspoiled of the Bay Islands of Honduras (to boat, to discuss).
10. In the late 1600s, the British \_\_\_\_\_ all non-English ships from trading with colonies (to forbid).
11. We \_\_\_\_\_ busy building our new country house that year (to be).
12. Our friend's dog \_\_\_\_\_ us as we \_\_\_\_\_ around the neighborhood (to follow, to walk).
13. The student \_\_\_\_\_ up the escalator while it \_\_\_\_\_ (to run, to *move*).

## VIII. Verb+to/ Verb+ing

I. Термін **Verb Patterns** стосується зв'язків присудка в реченні. Як в українських, так і в англійських реченнях в якості прямого додатку після присудка зазвичай виступає іменник або займенник. *E.g. I saw her yesterday.*  
 - Я бачив її вчора. Цю ж функцію в українському реченні може виконувати **інфінітив** (початкова форма дієслова). Напр .: *Вона попросила передзвонити пізніше.*

В англійській мові більшість дієслів теж вимагають після себе **інфінітива в якості прямого додатку**. Слід зазначити, що в англійській мові інфінітив, як правило, вживається з часткою **to**: *E.g. I want to buy a new car. She promised to come in time.*

Конструкція **verb + to ... (infinitive)** зустрічається в тому випадку, коли дієслово, що виконує функцію прямого додатку, стоїть після таких дієслів:

choose	promise	help	want
decide	manage	hope	agree
forget	need	try	refuse

*E.g. I agreed to lend him money.*

*We decided not to go out because of the weather.*

Інфінітив також вживається після виразів **be going i be able**:

*E.g. He is going to be a doctor.*

**Без частки to** інфінітив вживається:

- після **модальних** дієслів *can / could, may / might, must, should*;

- після **допоміжних** дієслів *will / would, do / do not, does / does not*:

*E.g. She can dance well.*

Однак є ряд дієслів, після яких в якості прямого додатка вживається **-ing-**форма:

like	enjoy	stop
dislike	hate	mind

love	finish	suggest
------	--------	---------

*E.g. Would you mind closing the window?*

Після дієслів **begin, start** continue може вживатися як герундій, так і інфінітив, напр .:

*Ann began to sing her favourite song.*

*Ann began singing in her early years.*

### **8.1 Fill in the gaps with the infinitive of verbs with or without “to”.**

be open leave eat hear buy have help take get see go
--

1. “What time do you want ... the house?” “At about 8.”
  2. I’ve saved enough money. Now I can ... that house.
  3. I’m too tired to walk home. I’ll ... a taxi.
  4. It was a nice day, so we decided ... for a walk.
  5. I wonder where Sue is. She promised not ... late.
  6. Could you ...the door, please?
  7. There was a lot of traffic, but we managed ... to the airport in time.
  8. I’m not good at writing an essay, so she agreed ... me with it.
  9. I was feeling ill yesterday. I couldn’t ... anything.
  10. They insisted that we should ... dinner with them.
  11. I hope ... from you soon. Best wishes, Peter.
  12. He is very busy, so I don’t think he will be able ... us next week.
- 5.2. Раскройте скобки и поставьте глаголы в правильную форму.
1. I enjoy ... (visit) other countries.
  2. What have you decided ... (do)?
  3. I’m trying ...(work). Please stop ... (talk).
  4. Have you finished ... (clean) the kitchen?
  5. The weather was nice, so I suggested ... (have) a walk.
  6. I’m tired. I want ... (go) to bed immediately.
  7. Don’t forget ... (send) me a postcard when you’re on holiday.

8. Do you really enjoy ... (read) books?
9. I don't mind ... (travel) by train but I hate ... (fly).
10. We invited Jane to the party but she didn't want ... (come).
11. Chris loves ... (act). He hopes ... (be) famous one day.
12. You must stop ... (work) long hours. It's bad for you.
13. They were very angry and refused ... (speak) to me.
14. Why did you start ... (cry)?
15. Will you ... (buy) some more vegetables?
16. I can't ... (see) you on Saturday. I promised ... (take) my children to the circus.
17. I began ... (learn) English when I was seven.

## II. Деякі випадки вживання **-ing-форми**.

Тільки **-ing-форма** вживається після:

1) складених дієслів, таких як: **go on, keep on, give up, put off, etc.,**

*E.g. We can not go on living like this! - Ми не можемо продовжувати жити так!*

2) будь-якого дієслова, що має після себе прийменник: **depend on, look forward to, think of, etc.,**

*E.g. We all looked forward to going to the South. - Ми всі з нетерпінням чекали поїздки на південь.*

3) прикметників з фіксованим прийменником: **be afraid of, be fond of, be interested in, be worth of, feel like, etc.,**

*E.g. I am afraid of speaking to him. - Я боюся розмовляти з ним.*

4) після прийменників **after, before, besides, on, without, instead of,**

*E.g. Besides learning French Ann is fond of ancient literature. - Крім вивчення французької мови, Анна захоплюється античною літературою.*

## III Like doing / would like to do.

**Like doing** і **love doing** вказує на те, що ми любимо робити взагалі.

*E.g. I love dancing. - Я люблю танцювати.*

*Jack likes fishing. - Джек любить рибалити.*

**Would like to do / would love to do** вказує на те, що ми вважаємо за краще робити в даний момент або в будь-який конкретний момент.

*E.g. I'd love to have my own business. - Я б хотів мати свою власну справу.*

*I'd like all the people in the world to be happy. - Я б хотів, щоб всі люди в світі були щасливі.*

#### **IV Go swimming / go fishing**

Конструкція **go+ing** вживається для вираження різних видів діяльності (особливо видів спорту): *go swimming, go sailing, go skiing, go jogging, go shopping, go sightseeing, etc.,*

*E.g. I'd like to go skiing. - Я б хотів покататися на лижах.*

*When did you last go shopping? - Коли ти останній раз робила покупки?*

#### **8.2. Complete the sentences so that they are synonymous with those in brackets.**

*E.g. (Why is it useful to have a car?) What are the advantages of having a car?*

1. (Helen has a good memory for names.) Helen is good at \_\_\_\_\_
2. (We didn't eat at home. We went to a restaurant instead.) Instead of \_\_\_\_\_
3. (Tom thinks that working is better than doing nothing.) Tom prefers working to \_\_\_\_\_
4. (They got married. They didn't tell any of their friends.) They got married without \_\_\_\_\_
5. (Our team played well but we lost the game.) Our team lost the game in spite of \_\_\_\_\_
6. (Carol wants to leave school soon.) Carol is looking forward to \_\_\_\_\_
7. (Do you want to play tennis tomorrow?) How about \_\_\_\_\_?
8. (I phoned Sarah. Then I went out.) I phoned Sarah before \_\_\_\_\_

9. (I had the same job for ten years and I felt I needed a change.) I felt I needed a change after \_\_\_\_\_

**8.3 Complete the sentences with one of the verbs given below in the correct form.**

escape	go	interrupt	solve	cause	see	spend	come	help
--------	----	-----------	-------	-------	-----	-------	------	------

E.g. Do you feel like going out this evening?

1. It took us a long time but we finally succeeded in \_\_\_\_\_ the problem.
2. Where are you thinking of \_\_\_\_\_ your holiday this year?
3. Forgive me for \_\_\_\_\_ you but may I ask you something?
4. The driver of the other car accused me of \_\_\_\_\_ the accident.
5. The guards weren't able to prevent the prisoner from \_\_\_\_\_.
6. I wanted to cook the meal myself but Dave insisted on \_\_\_\_\_ me.
7. Mrs. Bond thanked Sue for \_\_\_\_\_ to see her.
8. The film isn't very interesting. It's not worth \_\_\_\_\_ it.

**8.4 Open the brackets by putting the verbs in the correct form (to... или -ing).**

1. I like your house. Do you like \_\_\_\_\_ (live) here?
2. What would you like \_\_\_\_\_ (do) this evening?
3. I'd love \_\_\_\_\_ (help) you but it's impossible.
4. I travel a lot. I love \_\_\_\_\_ (travel).
5. My brother is a teacher but he doesn't like \_\_\_\_\_ (teach) very much.
6. This ring is very beautiful. I'd hate \_\_\_\_\_ (lose) it.

**IX. Future forms /Способи вираження майбутнього часу**

**Future Simple** утворюється з використанням допоміжного дієслова **shall** (**I, we**) та **will** для всіх інших осіб і **інфінітива** основного дієслова **без частки to**. У питаннях допоміжний дієслово ставиться перед підметом. Негативна форма утворюється за допомогою частки **not**, в розмовній мові вживається скорочена форма **won't**. Останнім часом існує тенденція вживання допоміжного дієслова **will** для усіх осіб та чисел.

**Примітка: вважається нечемним на прохання відповісти I will not. В цьому випадку говорять I'm afraid I can not.**

Стверджувальна форма  +	I You He (She, It) will read tomorrow We They
Питальна форма  ?	I you he (she, it) Will we read tomorrow? they
Заперечна (негативна) форма  -	I You He (She, It) will not read tomorrow We (won't) They

**Future Simple** вживається:

1. Для вираження майбутнього рішення або наміру прийнятого під час розмови: *I'll give you my phone number.*
2. Для вираження пропозиції, прохання, обіцянки: *I'll give you a lift.*
3. Після дієслів, що виражають думку людини (**think, expect, wonder, to be sure**): *I wonder what will happen?*

Оборот **going to** утворюється за допомогою допоміжного дієслова **to be + going + to + інфінітива** основного дієслова. У питальних пропозиціях допоміжне дієслово ставиться перед підметом.

Оборот використовується для вираження майбутніх рішень, намірів та планів, прийнятих до розмови: *She's going to have a birthday party, або коли,*



виходячи з ситуації, ми можемо припустити або передбачити те, що станеться в майбутньому: *Look at these clouds! It's going to rain.*

**Примітка:** **Present Continuous** також може бути використаний в цьому випадку, особливо з дієсловами **go** і **come**: *She's coming on Friday.*

### **Future in the Past Simple Tense ( час майбутній у минулому)**

Характеризує дію, яка є майбутньою у зв'язку з фіксованим моментом в минулому. Усі форми **Future in the Past** утворюються аналогічно відповідним формам **Future**, тільки замість допоміжних дієслів **shall, will** вживаються форми **should** і **would**. Питальна і негативна форми утворюються за тими ж правилами, що і форми **Future**.

Скорочені форми: *I should = I'd, we should = we'd, he would = he'd, they would = they'd, should not = should not, would not = would not.*

*I think I will come by the morning train. - Я думаю, що приїду ранковим поїздом.*

*I thought I would come by the morning train. - Я думав, що приїду ранковим поїздом.*

**The Future Continuous Tense (майбутній тривалий час)** позначає тривалу дію, яка буде відбуватися в певний момент або відрізок часу в майбутньому.

*At ten o'clock* - о десятій годині,

*at that moment* - в цей момент

*all day long* - весь день,

*the whole year* - весь рік,

*from 5 till 6* - з п'яти до шести

**Future Continuous** утворюється за допомогою допоміжного дієслова **to be** у формі майбутнього часу (**shall be, will be**) і форми дієприкметники теперішнього часу (**Participle I**) основного дієслова.

*My granny will be still working in the garden at noon. - Опівдні бабуся ще буде працювати в саду.*

*If the weather is fine at that time, we shall be roller skating. - Якщо погода в цей час буде хороша, ми будемо кататися на роликах.*

**Future in the Past Continuous** вживається для вираження тривалої дії - наслідку, що відбудеться в певний момент в майбутньому, або майбутнього дії-наслідку, що впливає з обставин. Обидві дії співвідносяться з минулим.  
*And she thought that at this time next Sunday she would be approaching her beloved Paris. - І вона думала, що в цей же час наступної неділі вона вже буде під'їжджати до свого улюбленого Парижу.*

**9.1 Complete the sentences with one of the phrases below. Put the verbs in the correct form.**

go skiing   go shopping   go swimming   go sailing   go riding   go sightseeing
---

E.g. Barry lives by the sea and he's got a boat, so he often goes sailing.

1. There's plenty of snow in the mountains so we'll be able to \_\_\_\_\_ .
2. It was a very hot day, so we \_\_\_\_\_ in the river.
3. Margaret has two horses. She often \_\_\_\_\_ .
4. The shops are shut now. It's too late to \_\_\_\_\_.
5. If you are interested in historical places we can \_\_\_\_\_ .

**9.2 Complete the sentences using will ('ll) or going to.**

1. A: Why are you turning on the television? B: \_\_\_\_\_ the news. (I/watch)
1. A: Oh, I've just realized. I haven't got any money. B: Haven't you? Well, don't worry. \_\_\_\_\_ you some. (I/lend)
3. A: I've got a headache. B: Have you? Wait there and \_\_\_\_\_ an aspirin for you. (I/get)
4. A: Why are you filling that bucket with water? B: \_\_\_\_\_ the car. (I/wash)
5. A: I've decided to repaint this room. B: Oh, have you? What colour \_\_\_\_\_ it? (you/paint)

6. A: Where are you going? Are you going shopping? B: Yes, \_\_\_\_\_ something for dinner. (I/buy)

7. A: I don't know how to use this camera. B: It's quite easy \_\_\_\_\_ you. (I/show)

8. A: What would you like to eat? B: \_\_\_\_\_ a sandwich, please. (I/have)

9. A: Did you post that letter for me? B: Oh, I'm sorry. I completely forgot. \_\_\_\_\_ it now. (I/do)

10. A: The ceiling in this room doesn't look very safe, does it?

B: No, it looks as if \_\_\_\_\_ down. (it/fall)

11. A: Has George decided what to do when he leaves school?

B: Oh, yes. Everything is planned. \_\_\_\_\_ a holiday for a few weeks and then \_\_\_\_\_ a computer programming course. (he/have, he/do)

**\*9.3 Decide what you will do at the time of speaking. Use the Future Simple Tense (will /won't + Infinitive).**

1. Oh, I have left the door open. I (to go) and shut it.
2. What would you like to drink? – I (to have) an orange juice, please.
3. I can see you're busy, so I (not to stay) long.
4. Did you phone Ruth? – Oh, no, I forgot. I (to phone) her now.
5. I'm too tired to walk home. I (to get) a taxi.
6. I don't know how to use this computer. – OK, I (to help) you.
7. I have little time. I (not to do) the washing-up now.
8. I need some money. – OK, I (to lend) you some. How much do you need?
9. I'm sorry about what happened yesterday. It (not to happen) again.

**\*9.4 Combine these words with the Future Simple Tense.**

probably → I haven't seen Carol yet. I ... she (to phone) tonight.

expect Do you ... Sarah (to like) our present?

sure I ... (to be) home late this evening.

think I ... what (to happen).

don't think Don't worry about the exam. I am ... you (to pass).

wonder I ... the exam (to be) very difficult.

**9.5 Ask your friend's opinion using "Shall I..?", "Shall we..?"**

1. You and your friend don't know what to do this evening. – What ...? 2. You are not sure whether to buy a new jacket. You ask a friend for advice. – ... it? 3. You want to give a birthday present to Ann but you don't know what. – What ...? 4. You don't know whether your friend wants you to open the window. – ...? 5. You and your friend haven't decided whether to travel by car or by train. – ... or ...? 6. You don't know whether your friend wants you to phone him /her later. – ...? 7. You are not sure where to have dinner – in a café or in a restaurant. – Where ...?

**9.6 Make up sentences using "be going to+Infinitive".**

1. Are you going shopping? – Yes, (I /buy) something for dinner.
2. Has George decided what to do when he leaves school? – Oh, yes. (He /do) a computer programming course.
3. I can take you to the airport tomorrow. – Thanks, but (Ann /take) me.
4. What are your plans for the weekend? – (We /have) a trip to London.
5. Have you decided what to do about that job that was advertised? – Yes, (I /not /apply) for it.
6. What (you /do) during your holiday? – I haven't decided yet.
7. (We /play) tennis yesterday but it rained all day.
8. (Sue and Tim /have) a party last Sunday but some of there friends couldn't come, so they cancelled it.
9. Smoking is very bad for you. – I know. (I /give up) it.

**9.7 Change the verb to be into Future Simple.**

1. My friend **is** a doctor. (in 5 years)
2. They **are** in Kharkov. (during winter vacation)
3. On Monday our first lesson **is** English, (next Monday)
4. She **is working** at the library now. (at 5 o'clock)
5. The book **is translated** into English, (soon).
6. The lesson **is** over. (in 5 minutes)

**9.8 Answer the questions.**

1. Where do you study? 2. Did you live in the hostel last year? 3. Will you take part in the conference? 4. When will you pass your English examinations? 5. Where does your friend study? 6. Where do your parents work? 7. Did you go to the theatre yesterday? 8. When did you finish school? 9. Do you often see your school-friend? 10. What is your future profession?

### **9.9 Open the brackets.**

1. If you (to translate) this article into English, I shall use it in my report. 2. If she (to be) in Kiev now, she will meet you at the I railway station. 3. If you (not to hurry), you will miss the train. 4. If it (to rain), we shan't go to the country. 5. When my friend (to come) to Odessa, we shall go to the Opera House. 6. What will you be doing when he (to come) to your place? 7. Don't forget to pay for your dinner before you (to leave) the canteen. 8. I shall /be able to translate this article if you (to give) me a dictionary. 9. You will have to work hard at home if you (to miss) the lesson. 10. Where will you go when you (to come) to London?

### **9.10 Use Present, Past or Future Simple Tense.**

A. 1. We always (to consult) a dictionary when we (to translate) texts. 2. We (to take part) in a sport competition last Sunday. 3. My friend (to pass) entrance examinations to the University last month. 4. He (to study) at the English Department now. 5. He (to graduate) from the University in five years and will become a teacher. 6. The students (to come) to the lectures every day. 7. We (not to go) to the country this Sunday.

B. 1. When he (to graduate) from the University, he will become a good specialist. 2. If you (to prepare) the report in time, you will take part in the conference. 3. When I (to be) 18, I (to take part) in the elections. 4. We (revise) the rules in some days. 5. If you (to come) to the lecture, you will learn many interesting things

### **9.11 Put the verb in *Future Simple* or use «to be going to»**

1. I've a headache. Wait. I ... (bring) you an aspirin.  
 2. Why have you taken the water? I ... (wash) a car.  
 3. I want to paint my room. - What colour you (paint) it?

4. What would you like to drink? I ... (have) a glass of milk.
5. Oh. We need some money. — I ... (lend) a little.
6. Did you send a letter? No, I forgot. I ... (do) it now.
7. I have bought the manual of the phone and I (read) it.
8. I (go) to this camp next month.
9. I think you (be) a good mother.
10. I ... (leave) you soon. My holidays are over.
1. When we (make) the decision we ... (let) you know.
2. Let's go inside. It (rain).
3. Where are you going? — I (buy) some bread for dinner.
4. What we .. (have) for dinner? I don't know... Ok. We (have) potatoes.
5. My car is broken and I (repair) it.

### **9.12 Translate into English.**

1. У наступному році мені буде 20 років.
2. Можливо, він прийде сьогодні.
3. Коли ви почнете вивчати іноземну мову?
4. Він думає, вам не сподобається новий балет.
5. Вона буде вдома о 6 годині? - Ні.
6. Я сподіваюся, ви добре напишете контрольну роботу.
7. У вас завтра буде багато роботи? - Так.
8. Іспити почнуться 1 липня.
9. Фільм буде дуже цікавим.
10. Ми побачимося з ним на наступному тижні.
11. Якщо ви зараз візьмете таксі, ви не встигнете на літак.
11. Коли ви захочете побачити мене, зателефонуйте.
12. Ви не будете знати англійську мову, поки не почнете наполегливо займатися.
13. Якщо вона подзвонить вам, попросіть її при-нести мені книгу.
14. Я побачу Тома завтра.
15. Як тільки я побачу Тома, я рас-скажу йому про це.

### **9.13 Open the brackets. Use Future Continuous Tense.**

1. This time next year I (not/work) for this company any more.
2. I (sit) at home. You can come at six tomorrow.
3. At nine o'clock the day after tomorrow, she (study) at the university.
4. We won't be at home this evening as we (look) after our neighbor's baby.
5. He (have) breakfast at ten o'clock, so, please. Do not disturb him.

6. Jacob can give the papers to him as he (see) him this evening.
7. I will meet you tomorrow. I (wait) for you at eleven at the station.
8. He can help you in the library tomorrow as he (prepare) his work anyway.
9. My parents (paint) the house all the weekend.
10. They can't visit you on Tuesday because they (play) volley-ball then.

#### **9.14 Translate into English.**

1. Завтра ти будеш працювати весь день? 2. Марк не буде завтра ввечері брати машину. 3. Ти завтра будеш їхати в Київ весь день? 3. У цей час завтра Джейкоб буде дивитися фільм. 4. Завтра весь день я буду прибирати свій дім. 5. Сьюзен завтра вранці не читатиме книгу, оскільки вона буде зайнята. 6. В цей час в наступному році я буду студентом. 7. Анна буде грати з тобою в теніс завтра днем? 8. Мої батьки не будуть завтра увесь день готуватися до своєї подорожі.

**\*\*9.15 Write an essay about your winter holiday using “I am going to...” (if you have decided yet) or “I think / I’ll probably ...” (if not).**

To spend time in..., to go to the countryside, to go skiing /skating; to travel about /by..., to have a trip to..., to visit, to enjoy, to go sightseeing, to take pictures of beautiful views

### **PART 3. Speaking**

#### **Vocabulary**

***Learn the following words and expressions:***

to attend lectures - відвідувати лекції

credit-test - залік

course of studies - курс навчання

curriculum (pl. curriculums) – програма навчання

to enter the University - вступити до університету  
entrance examinations - вступні іспити  
external student - студент-заочник  
first-year student - студент першого курсу  
full-time student - студент денного відділення  
to graduate from the University - закінчити університет  
hard – тяжко, багато (працювати)  
to last - тривати  
to miss (lectures, seminars) - пропускати лекції, семінари  
senior student - студент старших курсів  
social activities - суспільне життя  
state grant - стипендія  
subject - навчальний предмет  
successfully - успішно  
to submit a graduation paper - захистити випускну роботу  
to take / to pass an examination (in) - здавати / здати іспит (з)  
teaching practice - педагогічна практика  
term - семестр  
the Independent External Evaluation – Зовнішнє Незалежне Оцінювання (ЗНО).

***Read and translate the following text.***

## **OUR STUDIES**

We were admitted to the University because we passed the Independent External Evaluation at school successfully. We didn't have to take entrance examinations. Now we are first-year students of different faculties of the University. We are full-time students, but there are also part-time and external students at the University who combine work and learning.



The course of studies for future Bachelors lasts four years. The academic year at the University begins in September. It lasts ten months and ends in July. Each academic year has two terms. At the end of each term students take credit-tests and terminal examinations. Full-time students usually have their examination sessions in January and in June.

There are a lot of subjects on the curriculum: History of Ukraine, Philosophy, Pedagogy, Psychology, Computer Studies, Foreign languages, etc. Some of the subjects are rather difficult, so we work hard and do our best. Some subjects are very interesting.

We study six days a week: on Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday and Saturday. Sunday is our day off. Our classes usually begin at 8 o'clock in the morning. Every day we have got a lot of lectures and seminars. As a rule we attend all of them and don't miss classes.

The University has a library and there are many thousands of books in it. There we can prepare for the next day's classes, write a report or a project (a course paper). Those who do well at their studies receive a state grant. We devote our spare time to the University social activities and take part in cultural life of the University. During summer holidays some students work in summer camps for children. Senior students always have a teaching practice at schools or in kindergartens.

Some of us live in hostels. They are not far from the University and it takes us not much time to get there.

At the end of the course of study we'll take our final examinations and submit a graduation paper. After graduating from the University we'll be teachers at schools or in kindergartens.

***1. Answer the following questions.***

1. Did you enter the University straight from school?
2. You are a full-time student, aren't you?

3. How long does the course for future Bachelors last?
4. How many terms does the academic year have?
5. What do students take at the end of each term?
6. What subjects are there on the curriculum?
7. What subjects are the most interesting for you?
8. What will you submit at the end of the course of study?
9. What are your future plans after graduating from the University?

**2. \*Ask your friend if he or she...**

- 1) attends all the lectures and seminars;
- 2) lives in a hostel;
- 3) often goes to the library;
- 4) receives a state grant;
- 5) has the teaching practice this year;
- 6) devotes his spare time to the social activities.

**Lexical Exercises**

**\* 1. Fill in the blanks with prepositions if necessary.**

1. He is a student ... the Pedagogical University.
2. ... last year I entered ... the faculty ... psychology.
3. He goes ... the University every day.
4. My sister got interested ... chemistry ... the age ... 16.
5. How long does the course ... engineers last ... your University?
6. We passed our examination ... philosophy ... the 12<sup>th</sup> ... January.
7. How do you prepare ... the next day classes?
8. D.I. Mendelejev graduated ... the institute in 1854.
9. My friend is good ... mathematics.
10. Some students take part ... cultural activities.
11. The hostels are not far ... the University.
12. ... the end ... the course ... study we'll take our final exams.

**2. Explain or name what it is:**

- a) the method of teaching when students listen to a professor and write down;
- b) students who combine work and learning;
- c) the place where books and other literary materials are kept;
- d) a sum of money to finance educational study;
- e) the testing of knowledge of students without giving any definite mark;
- f) a period in which a break is taken from studies for rest, travel, or recreation;
- g) the method of teaching when students in small groups discuss with a professor theories and exchange information;
- h) any of the divisions of the academic year at the University.

**3. Read the sentences translating the words in brackets into English.**

1. We began to attend school (у шестирічному віці).
2. We (зацікавлені) in some school subjects.
3. I worked hard and passed the Unified State Exam (успішно).
4. Now I (студентка першого курсу).
5. In January we will (складати заліки та семестрові іспити).
6. It is very important not to (не пропускати лекції та семінари).
7. We (берём) all necessary books in the library (щоб підготуватися до занять).
8. There are different subjects on the (програмі навчання).
9. We work (тяжко) and (дуже намагаємося вчитися).
10. (Мені потрібно небагато часу) to get to the University.
11. Some students (отримують стипендію) and live (у гуртожитку).

**\*\*4. Make up your topic "My studies" using the following points as a plan:**

- a) taking the Independent External Evaluation;
- b) the academic year at the University;
- c) the subjects on the curriculum;
- d) the forms and methods of teaching;
- e) the time-table of your classes;
- f) social life at the University;

g) your future plans.

## TEXT FOR SUPPLEMENTARY READING

*\*Read the following text and do the tasks given below.*

### **The Bell Schools in the UK**

1. In 1955 Frank Bell started a school of English for overseas students in Cambridge. This was so successful that in 1969 he opened another school in Bath and later others in Norwich and Saffron Walden. All the schools of the Bell group aim (намагаються) to combine good teaching in attractive and friendly surroundings. In 1973 the school in Bath became the Bell Educational Trust, a non-profit-making educational foundation.

2. The school accepts about one hundred students from many different countries. They all aim to improve their English. Students are accepted at all levels from complete beginners to very advanced. We ask that beginners should be able to read and write the English Alphabet. The minimum age for enrolment is 17 and the average age of the students is about 22. There are three terms of about eleven weeks each; these are October to December, January to March and April to June. There are three shorter courses in summer in July, August and September.

3. At the start of the course all students are given a test and an interview so that we can form the right group for learning. When the school decides on the groups they consider levels of English, nationality and the number of men and women so that each group forms a positive coherent learning unit. Each group has a group tutor. This is the teacher who is responsible for the group and who plans the course work. The teaching may be different at different levels. For example, advanced students often need more practice with written work and elementary students need

more oral practice. However, the school tries to maintain a balance of four skills of listening, speaking, reading and writing and students are encouraged to use English as much as possible.

4. One of the features of the school approach to teaching English is the use of questionnaires, interviews and projects. The students are taken out of the classroom to use their English and they may find themselves interviewing people in the city centre or making a video film about life in Bath.

5. Here are some of the subjects the school offers: English Literature, Making a Magazine, Business English, the Media, Making a TV Programme, Music, Typing, Ecology, History, Photography, Technical English. The subjects may change each term but the School tries to offer as wide a range as possible. The aim of these lessons is to give students the chance to study something of interest to them in English and this encourages them to use English more.

At the end of the course each student receives a report which comments on progress, attendance and attitude.

***1. Say if it is true, false or there is no information.***

- a) The school in Bath occupies a pleasant nineteenth century house with an attractive garden and a car park.
- b) The academic year in Bell schools is divided into two terms.
- c) The groups at this school are formed according to the students' level of English knowledge, nationality and gender.
- d) Only advanced students may be accepted to Bell schools: they should be able to speak English fluently, write correctly and read.

***2. Choose the paragraph dealing with the following information:***

- a) A peculiar method of teaching in this school is spoken communication when students leave their classrooms to have a conversation with townspeople.
- b) There are a lot of subjects on the curriculum whose range changes each term.
- c) There are differences in teaching the advanced students and the beginners.

**3. Answer the question: “What are the duties of a group tutor?”**

**4. Choose the adequate summary of the text.**

- a) The school in Bath accepts about one hundred students from different countries who are classified into groups from complete beginners to very advanced.
- b) The main methods of teaching at such schools are questioning, interviews and projects; they give students more oral practice.
- c) The aim of the Bell group schools is to teach good English at different levels and according to the individual interests of the students.
- d) It is very important to form the groups of students according to the results of entrance test.

### Завдання, тести для самоперевірки

#### PART 1. PHONETIC

**1.1. Read the following words and write down the correct vowel.**

A							
[ ]	[ ]	[ ]	[ ]	[ ]	[ ]	[ ]	[ ]
same	land	large	salt	watch	father	share	above
plate	tact	farm	all	wash	palm	chair	about
place,	act	car	fall	was	past,	pair	ago
space	factory	garden	talk	what	after	rare	legal

Ee	Uu
----	----

[ ]	[ ]	[ ]	[ ]	[ ]	[ ]	[ ]
here	send	person	be	cut	bush	music
dear	tent	certainly	meet	cup	full	future
tear	rest	perfect	me	plus	put	tune
mere	seven	her	seat	sun	pull	Cuba

Ii			Yy		
[ ]	[ ]	[ ]	[ ]	[ ]	[ ]
time	rich	shirt	tired	lady	yes
try	finish	bird	hire	already	yard
child	till	firm	retire	system	yellow
fine	pillow	first	fire	ready	yarn

Oo			
[ ]	[ ]	[ ]	[ ]
hope	long	son	more
home	got	come	for
rope	fond	love	morning
snow	song	month	before

## PART 2. GRAMMAR REVISION

### 2. 1.

**A. Use all the forms of Present Continuous with the verbs (swim, write, learn) in affirmative sentences. (Work in pairs).**

Model: – I am speaking. – Are you?

1) We are speaking. 2) You are speaking. 3) He is speaking. 4) She is speaking. 5) They are speaking. 6) It is speaking.

***B. Use the verbs (sleep, play, read) in general questions. Give short answers.***

Model: – Am I working? – Yes, you are. / No, you're not.

1) Are we working? 2) Are you working? 3) Is he working? 4) Is she working? 5) Are they working? 6) Is it working?

***C. Use the verbs (dance, drive, leave) in negative sentences.***

Model: – I am not cooking. – Yes, you are!

1) We are not cooking. 2) You are not cooking. 3) He is not cooking. 4) They are not cooking. 5) She is not cooking.

***2.2 Compare the usage of Present Simple and Present Continuous, use the correct verb forms.***

A. Present Continuous	Present Simple
I (read) now.	I (read) every day.
He (sleep) now.	He (sleep) well every night.
My mother (not work) now.	My mother (not work) at an office.
They (not eat) now.	They (eat) at school every morning.
(drive) your brother now?	(drive) he to his office?
(watch) you TV now?	(watch) you TV in the evening?

B. 1. I usually ... (go) to the University by bus, but now I ... (walk).

2. My friend ... (wait) for me at the monument to A. Pushkin. He always ... (wait) for me there.



3. I always ... (attend) lectures and seminars. Some students ... (miss) classes sometimes. Today Alex and Peter ... (stay) away.

4. – What ...you ... (read) now? – I ... (read) a book by V. Pelevin. In fact, I ... (read) a lot.

5. – ... Nick ... (speak) French well? – No, he ... (not speak) it at all. But he ... (speak) English very well. Now he ... (speak) Ukrainian.

### ***2.3 Explain the usage of the tenses in these sentences.***

1. – Are you calling your girlfriend? – No, I am not calling her. In fact, I never call her, because she always calls me herself.

2. Mary Bell is a film star. She usually stars in films. But now she is not working. She is having a rest. She is talking with her friend, they are discussing new trends in fashion.

3. John is an actor. As a rule, he plays the parts of gangsters. But he is not acting now; he is at a night club. He is dancing with his girlfriend. All people at the club are watching him, because he is dancing beautifully. He usually dances well.

### ***2.4 Put the verbs in brackets into Present Simple, Present Continuous or Future Simple Tense.***

1. Look at the children: they (skate) wonderfully! They (skate) every Saturday here.

2. – What (do) you now? – I (wash) the dishes. In fact, I (wash) the dishes every evening. I hope my husband (buy) me a dish-washer next month.

3. We (write) a test now. All the students (work) hard. We always (do) our homework and (prepare) for classes, that is why I am sure we (pass) the test successfully.

### **2.5**

***A. Use Past Continuous and say what you or your friend(s) were doing (or were not doing) at 8 p.m. yesterday.***

Model: I was buying fruit at a supermarket.

Use these verbs: sleep, swim, read, write, take notes, take an exam, have supper, dance at a club, work at the library, prepare for a seminar, etc.

***B. Use Future Continuous and say what you or your friend(s) will be doing (or won't be doing) at 9 a.m. tomorrow.***

Model: I will be having breakfast at 9 a.m. tomorrow.

Use these verbs: wash one's face and hands, clean one's teeth, do one's home assignment, drink coffee, eat sandwiches, sleep, write a test, go home by bus, etc.

## 2.6

***A. Use Future Simple or Future Continuous.***

1. I am tired now. I think I (do) my homework tomorrow. 2. I (do) my homework at six o'clock tomorrow. 3. When I come home tomorrow, my family (have) supper. 4. Don't come to my place tomorrow. I (write) my terminal paper the whole evening.

B. 1. When you come to my place tomorrow I (read) your book. 2. I think I (not go) to the cinema tomorrow. 3. I (watch) TV the whole evening tomorrow. 4. What you (do) at 5 tomorrow? – I (play) football with my friends.

***B. Translate the following sentences into Ukrainian.***

1. I found nothing interesting there.
2. We have no milk in the fridge.
3. Anybody may come to the meeting.
4. We did not see our friend anywhere.
5. Something happened two days ago.
6. Anything may happen.
7. Somebody asked to stop the discussion.

***C. Put the pronouns in the following sentences.***

1. I have ... friends in Kyiv. (something, somebody, some, any, anybody)
2. Did ... suggest a problem for discussion? (any, anybody, some, somebody)
3. He will do ... for you! (some, any, anything, something)
4. She doesn't want to see ... tonight. (nobody, nothing, somebody, anybody)
5. Please, do ... to help her. (nobody, no, anything, something)
6. Does ... help this girl with mathematics? (any, nobody, somebody, anybody)
7. ... may smoke here. (nobody, something, nothing, any)
8. If you have ... against me, speak out! (somebody, some, any, anybody, something)
9. If you have ... against it, let's do it together. (nothing, anything, anybody, no, some)
10. Have you ... problems with your new subject? (no, any, some, something, anything)

***2.7 Fill in the blanks with "there+be" in the Present, Past or Future Tense. Pay attention to the type of the sentences: they may be affirmative, negative or interrogative.***

1. ... a gym in that building.
2. ... hot water yesterday. It was difficult to do washing up.
3. ... a swimming pool in your town?
4. ... lecture in chemistry today. It will be tomorrow.
5. ... a seminar in psychology yesterday.
6. ... two maps on the wall.
7. How many students ... in your group?
8. ... any books on the table. They are on the shelf.
9. ... any milk in the fridge. I'll go and buy it.
10. ... a café here last year?
11. I was hungry, but ... any food at home.
12. ... many students at the conference last week? Yes, ... many.
13. Are you going to the party tomorrow? ... many interesting people at it.

***2.8 Translate the following sentences into Ukrainian.***

1. There is an interesting exhibition in the museum. 2. Are there any chocolates in the box? 3. How much milk is there in the bottle? 4. There was a lot of snow in the mountains last winter. 5. There was no snow at all in some warmer places. 6. Perhaps there will be one more department at our University next year. 7. How many subjects are there on your curriculum? 8. There is somebody in the room. 9. There is no difficulty in working with this electronic device. 10. There are no seminars on Saturday. 11. There must be some way out! 12. There was an accident here yesterday. 13. There cannot be any problem with this telephone. 14. There exist two approaches to this problem.

## 2.9

### **A. Use the following verbs to make up imperative sentences.**

Take, go, come, open, close, read, sit, stand, put, etc.

1.... here! 2. ... to the table! 3. ... the book! 4. ... not ... down! 5. ... not ... the door! 6. .. the pen! 7. ... not ... the window! 8. ... the bag! 9. ... the book on the table! 10. ... not ... the bag on the chair! 11. ... nearer!

### ***B. Tell children at school what they should do to be fit.***

Model: It is good to go in for sports. – Go in for sports!

1. It is nice to spend much time in the open.
2. It is healthy to eat more fruit.
3. It is good for your health to drink juice.

### ***C. Now tell children not to do the wrong things.***

Model: Smoking is bad. – Don't smoke!

1. It is dangerous to walk late at night.
2. It is not good to be lazy.
3. It is not healthy to sit at the computer too long.

**2.10 Make up polite requests (you may continue the list).**

Order	Polite request
Begin reading!	Will you begin reading, please?
Translate the text!	
Get ready!	
Read the story!	
Speak about your family!	
Give us the results!	

**2.11 Read the sentences with phrasal verbs and translate them.**

1. The handle came off the bag when I picked it up. 2. What time are you coming back? 3. The job offer didn't come up to her expectations. Come up to me, please! 4. Never give in! You can do it! 5. The police told the killer to give his gun up. 6. You must give up smoking! 7. Hallo, can I speak to Carol, please? – Hold on a minute. I'll get Carol. 8. Look out, there's a bee on the window sill. 9. When my sister goes on vacation, I look after her dog. 10. I will never catch up. I am too behind in my work. 11. Vicky's parents are going to be so angry when they find out she got a tattoo. 12. Turn out the light before you go to bed. 13. It turned out that Smith was the murderer after all. 14. Turn up the TV. I can't hear what they're saying.

**2.12 Use the right phrasal verb.**

(Come back, come off, give up, come up, look out, look after)

1. Don't play with the key holder, the key may ...
2. After a week's holiday he ... to his office.
3. During the break children ... to their teacher.
4. Never ... learning English!

5. ... ! An old woman is crossing the street, drive carefully.  
 6. To ... children is a hard job.

(Turn up, find out, hold on, catch up, turn out, turn off)

7. I must work hard to ... with the other group mates.  
 8. You will never ... all my secrets!  
 9. ...the radio, I cannot hear anything on the phone!  
 10. ... the music ..., it's my favourite song.  
 11. ..., I'll be ready in a minute.  
 12. It ... that he hadn't passed the exam after all.

### **PART 3. LEXIC**

#### ***3.1 Pronounce correctly and pay attention to forming Participle I:***

do – doing	pay – paying	take – taking
go – going	cry – crying	come – coming
sing – singing	study – studying	cut – cutting
enter – entering	play – playing	get – getting

#### ***3. 2 Read, translate and memorise the following.***

- |  |  |   |   |
|--|--|---|---|
| 1) I am sitting.<br>You are walking.<br>He is singing.<br>She is talking.<br>We are writing.<br>They are fighting. | 2) Live and learn.    Live and let live. | 3) Don't trouble trouble, until trouble troubles you. | 4) Mister Brown, Mister Brown,<br>Are you going down town?<br>Could you stop and take me down?<br>Thank you kindly, Mister Brown! |
|--|--|---|---|

5) No bees – no honey, no work – no money.

## UNIT TWO

### OUR UNIVERSITY

#### PART 1. Phonetic

##### *Правила читання*

1. Буквосполучення **air** читається як дифтонг [eə]

pair, air, fair, hair, dairy, fairy

2. Буквосполучення **eer, ear** читається як дифтонг [iə]

near, fear, hear, cheer, tear, leer, dear

3. III і IV типи читання голосних букв під наголосом:

III тип читання - склад, де за наголошеною голосною слідує приголосна буква "r" (+ приголосна)

IV тип читання - склад, де за наголошеною голосною за буквою "r" слідує ще одна голосна

	a	e	i	y	u	o
<b>III тип читання</b>	[a:] car	[e:] her	[ə:] bird	[ə:] myrtle	[ju:] turn	[o:] sport
<b>IV тип читання</b>	[εə] hare	[iə] here	[aiə] fire	[aiə] tyre	[juə] cure	[o:] fore

\* rare, hare, cart, hard, care, large, share, dark, star, charm, bar, bare, scare

\* herd, nerve, hers, here, merely, term, serf, terse, serve, mere, sere

\* tired, mire, girl, shirt, sir, first, thirty, dirty, wire, lyre, skirt, hire, bird, tyre

\*cord, fork, score, port, more, born, store, shore, sort, forty, dor

##### **Зведена таблиця читання наголошених голосних**



	<b>a</b>	<b>e</b>	<b>i</b>	<b>y</b>	<b>u</b>	<b>o</b>
<b>I тип чтения</b>	[ei] pale	[i:] we	[ai] life	[ai] type	[ju:]tube	[o:] rose
<b>II тип чтения</b>	[æ] cat	[e] bed	[i] sit	[i] system	[ʌ] cup	[o] pot
<b>III тип чтения</b>	[a:] dark	[ə:] bird	[ə:] girl	[ə:] myrtle	[ə:] nurse	[o:] fork
<b>IV тип чтения</b>	[ɛə] share	[iə] sere	[aiə] hire	[aiə] tyre	[juə] lure	[o:] more

4. Буквосполчення **ow** в *середині слова* та буквосполчення **ou** передає звук [au]  
town, brown, down, power, how, house, loud, round, pound, round

Буквосполчення **ow** в *кінці* слова читається як [ou]

window, slow, row, snow, grow, low, yellow, own, growth

5. У буквосполченні **wor** буква **o** читається як звук [ə:]

work, world, worse, word, worst, worship, network

6. Буквосполчення **ng** читається як звук [ŋ], а **nk** як [ŋk]

bang, long, wing, sitting, taking, song

bank, blank, wink, pink, tank, ink, sink

7. Буква **a** читається як довгий звук [a:] перед буквосполченнями **-th**, **-s** плюс приголосна і буквами **-f**, **-n**, **-l**

father, rather, path, bath, plant, branch, after, craft, grass, class, half, palm

8. Буква **o** передає звук [ʌ] перед буквами **m**, **n**, **th**, **v**

love, dove, some, won, front, month, mother, brother, come, wonder

**Читання голосних букв в ненаголошеному складі:**

a	again [ə`gein] servant [ˈsə:vənt] control [kən`troul] second [ˈsekənd]
---	---

о } – [ə] при редукции гласных в безударном положении и	product [ˈprɒdʌkt]
и – [ju:] о – [ou]	unite [ju:ˈnaɪt] metro [ˈmetrəʊ]
е – [ə] перед n +согласная	student [ˈstju:dənt]
er –[ə] в конце слов	teacher [ti:tʃə]
е            конечная l, n – не читается i        } + конечная l    – не читается о            конечная n    – не читается	seven [ˈsevn] pupil [ˈpju:pl] lesson [ˈlesn]

### Контрольні ВПРАВИ В ЧИТАННІ.

#### 1. Read the following words and write their transcription:

what, bird, those, system, lesson, teacher, fume, singing, space, touch, darling

#### 2. Using the rule of reading the vowels find and write down three examples of each type of vowel.

#### 3. Group the following words in the alphabetical order and translate them into Ukrainian.

1) are, thick, chair, floor, green, what, room, cup, it, kind, your, on, window, my

2) sit, sane, summer, sink, sorry, sport, she, six, singing, space, square, snow

#### 4. Read the following words:

1) [ou]: no, so, tone, sofa, over, rose, some, cosy, noble

2) [o]: not, box, bottle, offer, on, got, lot, cobble

3) [oi]: soil, noise, toy, joy, boy, voice, boil, toil

4) [ou]: boat, coat, road, goat, float, soap, toast

5) [ou]: cold, old, told, hold, fold, golden, bold

- 6) [o:]: short, form, shore, core, port, bore, lord, sport  
 7) [ə]: actor, sector, doctor, factor  
 8) [o:] hall, ball, fall, call, tall, stall  
 9) [ŋ]: ring» bang, singing, ringing, song, tong  
 10)[ŋk]: sink, think, thank, drink, tank  
 11)[ju:]: tube, huge, due, music, tunic, pupil  
 12)[ʌ]: tub, hug, duck, must, tunnel, pup  
 13)[u:]: blue, rale, true, flute, rude  
 14)[u]: took, book, shook, cook, hook, looking, booking  
 15)[u:]: fool, moon, proof, room, spoon, soon  
 16)[ə:] her, verb, term, nerve, first, dirt, third, burn, purse  
 17)[au]: pound, round, loud, bound, sound, about  
 18)[εə]: air, care, Mary, fare, hair  
 19)[iə]: here, dear, near, clear, engineer  
 20)[uə]: pure, cure, plural, curious, during  
 21)[aiə]: fire, wire, hire, tired, pirate, admire  
 22)[auə]: hour, power, flower, vowel, towel

**5. Read the following words and write their transcription:**

Snow, depth, width, sire, mere, bird, doctor, burn, sport, born, sir, care, squire,  
 long, pure, rear, there, maker, fume, she, singing, touch, room, space, brick, teach, bold,  
 run, match, eve, add, go, fix, wage, cake, fancy, fee, ink, day, dirty, here, nurse, serve,  
 English, turn, worker, pass, palm, dark, car, hair, more, fir, ring, yes, kind, riffle, huge,  
 town, round, child, pass, talk, half, six, know, witty, voice, satire, tester, darling, father,  
 front, mother, rather, after, among, aloud, along, gardener, ignorant, some, human,  
 parents, carrot, love, number, sister, tree, charm, jumper, young,

**Proverbs**

Прочитайте наступні прислів'я і приказки, визначте їх українські еквіваленти.  
 Слідкуйте за вимовою звуків [au], [ai], [ei], [ʌ], [iə]

1. Out of sight, out of mind.
2. Fight fire with fire.
3. It's never too late to learn.

## ІНТОНАЦІЯ

**Сполучна r** : якщо після слова, що закінчується на **-r**, або на **-re**, слідує слово, що починається з голосного звуку, то буква **-r** і буквосполучення **-re** читаються як звук [r]. Слово, що починається з голосного звуку, в цьому випадку вимовляється разом з попереднім словом.

The `teacher is \good [ ðə `ti:t[əriz \ gud ]

a \pen or a \pencil [ə \pen orə \ pensl ]

**6. Read the following sentences and word combinations using the rule of linking r correctly.**


your old bag	These are old maps
a chair and a table	These are apples
a pen or a pencil	What colour is this wall?
a new book or an old bag	Where is the book?
a doctor or a teacher	The floor is brown
a worker or an artist	They are old


**7. Read the following sentences using the rule of linking r correctly.**

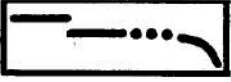
A pen or a pencil, a big or a small house, the floor is brown, the door is white, they are old, What colour is the pen? Where is the pencil?

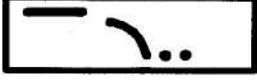
### 1. MELODY

- a) the FALLING tone (низький тон)

'What's  $\curvearrowright$ this? 

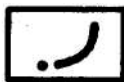
'What's your  $\curvearrowright$ name? 


'What 'colour is the  $\curvearrowright$ cup? 

'How  $\curvearrowright$ old is she? 

In the special question the falling tone is used.

б) the RISING tone (високий тон)

Good  $\curvearrowleft$ bye. 

Bye  $\curvearrowleft$ bye. 

При прощанні вітання вимовляються високим тоном. Слід зазначити, що вживання низького тону в привітаннях при прощанні вважається грубим, зневажливим ставленням до співрозмовника.

Звернення, що стоїть в середині або в кінці речення зазвичай безударно і продовжує мелодію попередньої синтагми (змістовий групи)

`Good after  $\backslash$ noon, Mr. White

So  $\backslash$ long, Mr. White.

**8. Read and learn the following word combinations which are widely used in English.**

Good  $\backslash$ morning!- Добрий ранок!

Good-  $\curvearrowleft$ bye - До побачення.

Good  $\backslash$ afternoon!- Добрий день!

So  $\curvearrowleft$ long- Пока! До зустрічі!

Good  $\backslash$ evening!-Добрий вечір!

See you  $\curvearrowleft$ soon (later)-Побачимося (скоро)

How do you do! –Доброго дня! Вітаю! Good Night!- На добраніч!

Hello! -Привіт

Bye- Bye. –Пока!

Hi!-Привіт

**9. Read the following sentences paying the special attention to the rules of reading and the intonation.**

<b>Positive form</b>	I am a student You are a student He is a student She is a student	We are students You are students They are students
<b>Negative form</b>	I am not a student You are not a student He is not a student She is not a student	We are not students You are not students They are not students

### General question

'Are you a student? – 'Yes, I am. 'No, I am not  
'Is he a teacher? – 'Yes, he is. 'No, he is not.  
'Are they at home? – 'Yes, they are. 'No, they are not.

### Alternative question

'Are you a doctor or a teacher? – I am a doctor.

### Special question

'Where is your brother? – He is at home.  
'Where are our students? – They are in class.

'What is \she? – She is an \engineer.

'Where is the \cup? – It is on the \table.

### Question to the subject

\Bill is	Вопрос к подлежащему всегда
'Who is \absent? ' Bill and \Ted are	согласуется с 3 л. ед.ч. глагола
'All 'students are \present	to be в форме is
\Which of you is \John? Кто из вас Джон?	
\Which of the \books is the \best? Которая из книг лучшая?	

### 10. Put the stresses and tones in the sentences.

- 1) Whose room is this?
- 2) What colour is the cup?
- 3) Is this student Ukrainian or English?
- 4) Who is this man?
- 5) Where is the man?
- 6) What kind of doctor is Mr. Brown?
- 7) Are these books new? Yes, they are.
- 8) Good bye
- 9) See you tomorrow

### 11. Read, translate and put the stresses and tones in the following sentences:

The students are absent. She is an artist. My brother is at home. We are in class. Her family is not large. My mother is an engineer. What is your name? Is she absent or present? Where is he now? He is not in class. He is ill. The book is in the bag. The table is in the room. Is this a pen or a pencil? The lamps are on the table. Where are the

books? They are on the shelf. The map is not on the wall. What are you? What is she?  
 What are they? What is your father? Who is absent?  
 Who is present in class? All students are present. Which of you is a student?

## PART 2. Grammar

### I. Present Perfect (теперішній доконаний час)

**Present Perfect** утворюється за допомогою допоміжного дієслова **to have** і **Participle II** основного дієслова. У питальній формі допоміжне дієслово ставиться перед підметом. У заперечній формі частка **not** ставиться після допоміжного дієслова.

Стверджувальна форма +	I (We) , You <b>have just seen/visited</b> They
	He (She) <b>has just seen/visited</b> It
Питальна форма ?	I (We) <b>Have</b> You, They just seen/visited ?
	<b>Has</b> he,she, it just seen/visited ?
Заперечна (негативна) форма -	I ,We, You <b>have not just seen/visited</b> They <b>(haven't)</b>
	He (She) <b>has not just seen/visited</b> It <b>(hasn't)</b>

**Present Perfect** вживається:

1. для вираження дії в минулому з результатом в сьогодні: *Where is your key? - I've lost it.* (Зараз у мене його немає).
2. для повідомлення про недавньому подію: *Oh, I've cut my finger.*



Наступні прислівники часто супроводжують таке вживання:

**just** - тільки що: *I've just had lunch.*

**already** - вже (вживається тільки в розповідних реченнях, зазвичай ставиться між допоміжним і змістовим дієсловами): *I've already posted the letter.*

**yet** - ще, вже (вживається в питальних і заперечних реченнях): *I have not seen him yet. Have you had dinner yet?*

3. Коли ми говоримо про період часу, що триває від минулого до теперішнього, зазвичай мається на увазі життєвий досвід людини: *Have you ever been to China?*

Наступні прислівники часто супроводжують таке вживання:

**ever, never, recently, lately, so far, for two years, since breakfast.**

4. Коли період часу ще не закінчився до моменту говоріння: *I've had four cups of coffee today.*

**Примітка:** зверніть увагу на різницю між виразами **have been** і **have gone**: *Jim has gone to Spain.* (Він зараз там) / *Jim has been to Spain.* (Побував і повернувся).

**1.1 You write a letter to your friend. Use the Present Perfect Tense to tell him what has happened to you and other people.** Dear Chris,

Lots of things have happened since I last wrote to you.

1. I / buy / a new car ... .
2. My father / start / a new job ... .
2. I/give up/smoking ... .
3. Charles and Sarah/go/to Brazil ... .
4. Suzanne / have / a baby ... .

**1.2 Write about what has happened using the words from the box in Present Perfect.**

<i>arrive</i>	<i>break</i>	<i>go up</i>	<i>grow</i>	<i>improve</i>	<i>lose</i>
---------------	--------------	--------------	-------------	----------------	-------------

1. Mike is looking for his key. He can't find it. He ... .
2. Margaret can't walk and her leg is in plaster. She ... .
3. Maria's English wasn't very good. Now it is much better. Her English ...
4. Tim didn't have a beard last month. Now he has a beard. He ... .
5. This morning I was expecting a letter. Now I have it . It ... .
6. Last week the bus fare was 80 pence. Now it is 90. The bus fare ... .

**1.3.\* Make up the sentences with the adverbs just, already or yet. Pay attention to the example.**

*E.g. After lunch you go to see a friend at her house. She says "Would you like something to eat?" You say "No, thank you. I've just had lunch." (have lunch)*

1. Joe goes out. Five minutes later, the phone rings and the caller says 'Can I speak to Joe?' You say: "I'm afraid ... " (go out)
2. You are eating in a restaurant. The waiter thinks you have finished and starts to take your plate away. You say: "Wait a minute! ..." (not/finish)
3. You are going to a restaurant this evening. You phone to reserve a table. Later your friend says "Shall I phone to reserve a table?" You say: "No, I ..." (do). You know that a friend of yours is looking for a job. Perhaps she has been successful. Ask her. You say: ... ? (find)
4. Ann went to the bank, but a few minutes ago she returned. Somebody asks "Is Ann still at the bank?" You say: No, ... (come back)

**1.4. Finish the sentences using been or gone.**

1. Jim is on holiday. He's ..... to Italy.
2. Hello! I've just to the shops. I've bought lots of things.
3. Alice isn't here at the moment. She's to the shop to get a newspaper.
4. Tom has out. He'll be back in about an hour.
5. "Are you going to the bank?" "No, I've already ... to the bank."

**1.5 Write a suitable sentence using the Present Perfect Tense:**

1. Ann's hair was dirty. Now it's clean. (wash) ..... Ann has washed her hair.

2. Tom was 80 kg. Now he's 70. (lose weight) .....
3. Bill played football yesterday. Now he can't walk; his leg is in plaster. (break).
4. My sister is looking for her pen. (lose) .....
5. Mary is on holiday in France. (go) .....
6. Mr. Hill was in Canada last week. He's back in London now. (be) .....
7. Look! Mrs. Smith has got a lot of packages. (buy) .....
8. I can't eat anything now. (eat too much) .....
9. Mrs. Jenkins is very tired. (clean / house) .....
10. Tony needs a holiday. (work / hard / this year) .....

**1.6 Put the words in the correct order.**

1. studied / Maths / have / I / and French.....
2. my / done / I / yet / English / haven't.....
3. my / you / looked / have / for / keys..... ?
4. been / since September / hot / has / it.....
5. never / to my parents / have / I / lied.....
6. a day off / had / never / has / Dad.....
7. phoned / you / I've / three times.....
8. seen / ever / a snake / you / have.....

**1.7 a) Make up the sentences with the adverbs:**

**a) ALREADY**

**Example:** Bring the milk in, please.

- I have ALREADY brought it in.

1. You must find the tickets soon. ....
2. Turn the radio down, please. ....
3. Tidy your room. ....
4. Could you post the letters, please? .....
5. Why don't you see a doctor? .....

**b) YET**

**Example:** She has been in the shop. (buy anything)

- She has been in the shop but she hasn't bought anything YET.

1. I've written to them three times. (not reply).....
2. I've asked you again and again. (not do it).....
3. I lent him \$10 last month. (not give it back).....
4. He lost his pen a week ago. (not find it).....
5. He borrowed my book last year. (not give it back).....

**c) Fill in the blanks with ALREADY or YET:**

1. He hasn't called us .....
2. They have ..... sent the letter.
3. John has .....bought the tickets for the football match.
4. We have ..... been to Mexico three times.
5. You haven't visited Tokyo .....
6. Has John bought a new car ..... ?
7. The plane has ..... left.
8. Has she done it ..... ? No, not .....
9. A: Haven't they arrived ..... ?  
B: Oh, yes. They have ..... arrived.
10. Hurry up! The class has ..... started.

**d) JUST**

**Example:** he / go out

- What has he JUST done?

- He has JUST gone out.

1. She / leave the room.....
2. they / watch the news.....
3. I / finish homework.....
4. he / put on the jacket.....
5. she / catch a fish.....

## II. Present Perfect and Past Simple

	Past Simple	Present Perfect
Стверджувальна форма	I You He, She, It <b>visited/went</b> yester day We, They	I, You We, They <b>have just visited/seen</b> He She <b>have just visited/seen</b> It
	I, you he <b>Did</b> she <b>visit/go</b> yesterday? it we, they	I, you <b>Have</b> we just <b>visited/seen</b> ? they he <b>Has</b> she just <b>visited/seen</b> ? it
Заперечна (негативна)	I, You He She <b>did not visit/go</b> yesterday It <b>(didn't)</b> We, They	I, We <b>have not just visited/seen</b> You, They <b>(haven't)</b> He, She <b>has not just visited/seen</b> It <b>(hasn't)</b>

**Present Perfect** українською перекладається дієсловом доконаного виду минулого часу. Але і **Past Simple**, минулий невизначений час, в інших випадках перекладається так само. Виникає питання: коли вживати **Past Simple**, а коли **Present Perfect**?

**Past Simple** позначає:

- дію, що відбулася в певний момент у минулому: *He got married when he was 22 (in 1979).*

- дію, яка завершилася і стався розрив з сьогоднішнім: *I lived in Paris for a year. (Більше я там не живу). Ian Fleming wrote 14 novels. (Він уже помер і більше не пише).*

- використовується з питаннями *When? What time?*

**Present Perfect** позначає:

- дію, що відбулася в невизначений момент в минулому: *She's been to China*
- дію, що триває зараз: *She's lived in London for 20 years (і до цих пір там живе). She's written 20 novels (і це нинішнє).*
- вживання **Present Perfect** часто супроводжується такими виразами: for twenty years, since, ever never. *I have been worked here since 1995. / since I left school. I have never been to America. Have you ever been to America?*
- використовується з питанням *How long?*

**2.1 Make up the sentences with Present Perfect or Past simple using the words in brackets.**

*E.g. (it/not/ rain/ this week) – It hasn't rained this week.*

1. (the weather/ be/ cold/ recently)
2. (it/ cold/ last week)
3. (I/ not/ read/ a newspaper yesterday)
4. (I/ not/ read/ a newspaper today)
5. (Ann/ earn/ a lot of money/ this year)
6. (she/ not/ earn/ so much/ last year)
7. (you/ have/ a holiday recently?)

**2.2 Open the brackets using Present Perfect or Past Simple.**

*E.g. I don't know where Amy is. Have you seen (you/see) her?*

1. When I ... (get) home last night, I ... (be) very tired and I ... (go) straight to bed.
2. Your car looks very clean. ... (you/ wash) it?
3. George ... (not/ be) very well last week.
4. Mr Clark ... (work) in a bank for 15 years. Then he gave it up.
5. Molly lives in Dublin. She ... (live) there all her life.
6. "... (you/ go) to the cinema last night?" "Yes, but it ... (be) a mistake. The film ... (be) awful.
7. My grandfather ... (die) 30 years ago. I ... (never/ meet) him.
8. I don't know Carol's husband. I ... (never/ meet/ him).
9. A: Is your father at home? B: No, I'm afraid he ... (go) out.
- A: When exactly ... (he/ go) out? B: About ten minutes ago.
10. A: Where do you live? B: In Boston.
- A: How long ... (you/ live) there? B: Five years.
- A: Where ... (you/ live) before that? B: In Chicago.

A: And how long ... (you/ live) in Chicago? B: Two years.

### 2.3 Choose the correct form

*E.g. Everything is going well. We **didn't have / haven't had** any problems so far.*

1. Margaret *didn't go / hasn't gone* to work yesterday. She wasn't feeling well. 2. Look! That man over there *wears / is wearing* the same sweater as you. 3. Your son is much taller than when I last saw him. He *grew / has grown* a lot. 4. I still don't know what to do. I *didn't decide / haven't decided* yet. 5. I wonder why Jim *is / is being* so nice to me today. He isn't usually like that. 6. Jane had a book open in front of her but she *didn't read / wasn't reading* it. 7. I wasn't very busy. I *didn't have / wasn't having* much to do. 8. Tim wasn't happy in his new job at first but he *begins / is beginning* to enjoy it now. 9. After leaving school, Jack *found / has found* it difficult to get a new job. 10. When Sue heard the news, she *wasn't / hasn't been* very pleased. 11. Where *are you coming / do you come* from? Are you American? 12. "Ann has gone out." "Oh, has she? What time *did she go / has she gone*?"

### 2.4 Put the verbs in the correct tense. Use *Present Perfect or Past simple*.

1. .... Tim ..... (finish) his work yet?
2. .... he ..... (finish) it yesterday?
3. They ..... (just / go) out.
4. They ..... (go) out a minute ago.
5. .... Ann .....(study) yesterday afternoon?
6. .... you ..... (send) the letters yet?
7. .... she ..... (call) him a week ago?
8. They ..... (not / see) the film yet.
9. The train ..... (just / arrive).
10. .... you .....(ever / be) in a TV studio?
11. .... you and Tom .....(enjoy) the party last night?
12. .... you .....(not / finish) school last year?
13. I .....(lose) my dictionary. I can't find it anywhere.
14. His hair looks short. He .....(have) a haircut.

15. When ..... (he / give up) smoking?

**2.5**

**a) Ask questions with HOW LONG:**

Example: I am married.

- HOW LONG have you been married?

1. I know Bob. ....
2. Sue and Alan are married. ....
3. George is unemployed. ....
4. Those books are here. ....
5. Mary is at the airport. ....
6. My sister is ill. ....
7. She has got a bad cold. ....
8. Jan has long hair. ....
9. I have a yacht. ....
10. They are in the restaurant. ....

**b) Rewrite the following sentences twice, using SINCE and FOR:**

Example: I haven't seen you. (Christmas / 3 days)

- a) I haven't seen you SINCE Christmas.
- b) I haven't seen you FOR 3 days.
1. We've been here. (an hour / 4 o'clock)
  - a) .....
  - b) .....
2. She hasn't spoken to me. (2 weeks / last week)
  - a) .....
  - b) .....
3. They've lived in this street. (1970 / a long time)
  - a) .....
  - b) .....
4. I haven't had time to do it. (last Monday / a few days)
  - a) .....
  - b) .....
5. We haven't bought a new one. (ages / many years)
  - a) .....
  - b) .....



**2.6 Translate into English, using Present Indefinite, Present Continuous, Past Indefinite or Present Perfect Tense.**

1. Я зазвичай снідаю в половині восьмого. 3. Він уже побудував будинок? - Ні. 4. Чому ви йдете так швидко? - Я йду швидко, тому що я боюся спізнитися на потяг. Я завжди ходжу швидко вранці. 5. Моя сестра ніколи не носить джинси. 6. У той вечір я дивився телевізор. 7. Її племінник зазвичай приходить в 8:00 вечора. 8. Щовечора я дивлюся телевізор. 9. Коли я прийшов до Алекса минулої неділі, він читав нову книгу. Як тільки він закінчить читати її, він дасть мені цю книгу. 10. Я виграв цю партію в шахи (this game of chess). 11. Лекція ще не почалася, і студенти розмовляють. Зазвичай лекція починається в 9:00. 12. У школі він грав у баскетбол. 13. Я не грав у волейбол з 1983 року. 14. Автор ще молодий чоловік. Він написав свою першу п'єсу в 1985 році. 15. Зараз 9:00 вечора. Дитина вже заснув. Вчора ввечері він ліг спати набагато раніше.

**2.7 Rewrite sentences using Present Perfect.**

1. He (not come) back yet.
2. I just (get) a letter from my parents.
3. You ever (be) to the Crimea?
4. Please give me a pencil, I (lose) mine.
5. Where is Paula? – She (go) home.
6. They get only excellent marks. They (improve) their English.
7. You (read) all this books?
8. You (book) the tickets? – Yes, I ... .

**2.8 Rewrite sentences using for or since.**

1. I've lived in this house ...I was 6.
2. I haven't met her ... a long time.
3. She has been here ... 10 o'clock.
4. They have worked here ... 2 weeks.

**2.9 Rewrite sentences using Present Perfect or Past Simple.**

1. Last night I (feel) tired and (go) to bed very early.

2. The sun (not rise) yet.
3. We (not decide) what to do yet.
4. You (see) Jack today? – No, I ... .
5. My brother (return) from the North.
6. He (go) there 2 years ago.
7. Why you (come)? What do you want?
8. When you (come)? – I (come) 10 minutes ago.

**2.10 Answer the following question.**

1. Did Mary tell you about her plans?
2. Have your friends arrived?
3. Do your parents understand you?
4. Was your sister having breakfast when you phoned her?
5. Are you waiting for holidays?
6. Is your friend a student?
7. Were you a naughty child?
8. Did your parents use to spoil you?

**2.11 Write Past Tense forms and the Past Participles of the following verbs. Some of them are regular, and some are irregular.**

1. fly	3. teach	5. peel	7. pack	9. chose
2. found	4. invite	6. break	8. lose	10. show

**2.12 Put the verbs in brackets in Present Perfect.**

1. Linda (lose) her passport again. It' s the second tome it (happen).
2. You're out of breath. You (run)?
3. It (not rain) this week.
4. Tom (not work) very hard this month.
5. You (hear) this song?
6. I never ( drive) a car.
7. Look! Somebody (break) my pencil.

8. Would you like a cup of coffee? - No, I just (drink) tea.

**2.13 Put the verbs in brackets in the correct form, Present Perfect or Past Simple.**

1. Jim is away on holiday. He (go) to Spain
2. They (go) out after lunch and they just (come) back.
3. John (live) in Scotland for 10 years. Then he (move) to England. He (live) in London for 5 years.
4. Chinese (invent) printing.
5. They (have) a car when they were living in Oxford? - No, they (have) a car since they (move) to London.

**2.14 Fill in the gaps using for or since.**

1. I haven't seen Helen - Friday.
2. We have known each other we were children.
3. Hello! I haven't seen you \_ages.
4. It has been raining - 2 hours.
5. I've been learning English - 6 years.

**2.15 Put one of the adverbs in the list into each gap.**

Always, fortunately, even, exactly, still, of course, only, especially, at last, at least, too, nearly.

1. I have \_\_\_ loved music, \_\_\_\_, classic.
2. I was in such a hurry! I couldn't \_\_\_ have breakfast. - \_\_\_ You should have had coffee, \_\_\_\_
3. What are you doing? - You've \_\_\_ burnt my meal ! You don't \_\_\_ look at the frying-pan!
4. You should keep to a diet. Eat \_\_\_ greenstuffs and fruits. Perhaps then you'll get thinner, \_\_\_\_.
5. Are you going out tonight? - \_\_\_ I am!

**III. Past Perfect (минулий доконаний час)**

Утворюється за допомогою допоміжного дієслова **had** і **Participle II** основного дієслова.. У питальній формі допоміжне дієслово ставиться перед підметом. У негативній формі частка **not** ставиться після допоміжного дієслова.

<b>Стверджувальна форма</b> +	I (You/ We/They)  had visited/seen by 5 o'clock yesterday  He (She/It)
<b>Питальна форма</b> ?	I (you/we/they) Had she (he/it) visited/seen by 5 o'clock yesterday?
<b>Заперечна (негативна) форма</b> -	I (You/ We/They)  had not visited/seen by 5 o'clock yesterday  He (She/It)

**Past Perfect** вживається:

- для вираження минулої дії, яка вже відбулася до визначеного моменту в минулому. Цей момент може бути вказаний обставиною часу: **by 5 o'clock до 5 години, by that time на той час, by the end of the year до кінця року і ін.,** а також перед прийменником **before** і після прийменника **after**: *She had left by the 1st of June. After she had cried, she felt easier. He was nervous because he had never flown before.*

-для вираження минулої дії, яка вже завершилася до іншої, більш пізньої минулої дії, вираженої дієсловом в **Past Simple**: *When Sarah arrived at the party, Paul had already gone home.*

Примітка:

Дієслова руху і чуттєвого сприйняття зазвичай **не вживаються в Past Perfect**:  
*When he heard the song, he recognized it at once.*

*When he came home, he found his mother in an evening dress.*

**3.1. Open the brackets using Present Perfect or Past Simple.**

1. By two o'clock the teacher (to examine) all the students. 2. On my way to school I (to remember) that I (to leave) my report at home. 3. All my friends (to be) glad to hear that I (to pass) all the examinations successfully. 4. Poor Oliver (to lie) unconscious on the spot where Sikes (to leave) him. 5. He (to open) his eyes, (to look) around and (to try) to remember what (to happen) to him. 6. All the passengers (to see) at once that the old man (to travel) a great deal in his life. 7. By the time we (to come) to see him, he (to return) home. 8. During the holidays my friend (to visit) the village where he (to live) in his childhood. 9. When they (to enter) the hall, the performance already (to begin). 10. When I came home, my mother (to tell) me that she (to receive) a letter from grandfather.

**3.2. Make up the sentences using the Past Perfect Tense.**

- 1) The Presleys/to move/into a new flat/before last Easter.
- 2) Mike/to injure/his leg/so/he/couldn't skate/yesterday,
- 3) We/to write/the test/by 2 o'clock/yesterday.
- 4) Molly/to cook/breakfast/be fore/Harry/woke up.
- 5) By the time/we/reached/the seaport/our ferry/to leave.
- 6) Torn/apologized/because/he/to miss/the seminar.
- 7) Nora/looked/wonderful/after/she/to lose/a few kilos.
- 8) After/they/to put/a tent/they/made a fire.
- 9) Fred/to phone/me before/1 /left/ho me.
- 10) Every body/en joyed/the visit/to the museum/although/we/already/to be/there.

**3.3. Put the verbs in brackets into the Past Perfect Tense.**

- 1) Ella ... (to type) six letters by lunchtime.
- 2) After we ... (to buy) the tickets, we went to the platform.
- 3) When our delegation arrived at the university, the conference ... (already to begin).
- 4) There were no oranges left because Jane and Max ... (to eat) them all,
- 5) Mary ... (to give) me a warm blanket before I went to bed.
- 6) The lawyer ... (to prepare) all the documents by 4 o'clock yesterday.
- 7) The workers ... (to finish) the reconstruction of the bridge by the beginning of June.
- 8) I ... (to see) that man somewhere before I met him at the presentation.

9) By the time the police arrived, the burglars ... (to escape).

10) The rain started after we ... (to catch) a taxi.

**3.4. Make the sentences negative and interrogative.**

1) David had booked the room in the hotel before.

2) We had decorated the hall for the disco party by 4 o'clock.

3) They had agreed about the time of the meeting by Monday.

4) Sally had vacuumed the carpets before my arrival.

5) My parents had seen that performance before.

6) They had left for the airport before 5 o'clock.

7) You had fixed that camera by Tuesday.

8) Peter had paid the electricity bill before the weekend.

9) Wendy had shown me her fancy dress for the New Year party before.

10) It had stopped snowing by 9 o'clock.

**3.5 Open the brackets using Past Perfect or Past Simple.**

1. After Christian ... (spend) his summer in Spain, he ... (want) to learn Spanish.

2. Jane ... (phone) Mom at work before she ... (leave) for her journey.

3. Kate ... (turn on) the radio after she ... (wash) the dishes.

4. After the woman ... (come) home, she ... (feed) the dog.

5. When Christina ... (arrive), the film ... already ... begin).

6. He ... (play) guitar before he ... (sing) a song.

7. Eric ... (phone) his friend after he ... (make) breakfast.

8. After the children ... (go) to bed, she ... (watch) the video.

9. Children ... (ride) their bicycles before they ... (met) friends.

10. Pupil ... (be) very tired because he ... (study) too much.

**3.6 Open the brackets using Present, Past, Future Simple; Present, Past Continuous; Present, Past Perfect.**

1. What you (to learn) for today? — I (to be) sorry, I (not to prepare) my lesson. I (to be) ill yesterday and (not to know) what to do. I (to prepare) my lesson tomorrow. —

If you (not to prepare) your lesson tomorrow, you (to get) a bad mark. 2. What you (to do) at five o'clock yesterday? 3. Mike always (to do) his homework in the evening, but

today he (to begin) doing it as soon as he comes from school, because his father (to promise) to take him to the theatre. 4. When Mary (to come) home, her brother (to read) the book which she (to bring) him two days before. 5. Autumn (to come). It (to be) November now. It (to get) colder, the days (to get) shorter. It often (to rain). Soon it (to be) very cold. 6. When I (to do) my homework yesterday, I quickly (to run) to the yard, because my friends (to wait) for me there. 7. We (to have) a good time last summer.

### **3.7 Translate into English:**

1. Він побачив книгу там, де він її залишив. 2. Коли гості пішли, вона увійшла до вітальні і вимкнула світло. 3. Дощ припинився, але був ще легкий туман. 4. Я не знала, коли він пішов. 12. Коли експедиція повернулася, вони розповіли, що вони бачили в Арктиці. 5. Вона закінчила читати книгу до того часу, коли її сестра постукала в двері. 6. Коли всі пішли, вона підійшла до телефону і подзвонила.

### **3.8.\* Put the verbs in the bold type into the Past Simple, Past Perfect or Past Continuous.**

I travel all over the country in my job and whenever I take the train to Scotland, I remember the story about the man whose wife *have*(1) just a baby. He *work* (2) in London at the time but he *live* (3) in Newcastle, which is in the north-east of England, not far from the Scottish border. As soon as he *hear* (4) the news, he *rush* (5) to King's Cross Station. He bought his ticket and then, just before he *jump* (6) on the first train north, he *ring* (7) his wife to say he would soon be with her. He *be* (8) so excited at the news that he *tell* (9) the woman who *sit* (10) in the same compartment. She *ask* (11) him if he lived in Edinburgh, as that was where the train *go* (12), and was surprised to hear that he lived in Newcastle. 'But this train doesn't stop at Newcastle,' she *reply* (13). 'It goes straight to Edinburgh.' When the man *hear* (14) this, he *run* (15) to the front of the train to speak to the driver. After telling him his story, he *beg* (16) him to stop the train at Newcastle. He even *offer* (17) him money, but the driver still *refuse* (18). However, he *agree* (19) to slow the train down to 15 m.p.h. so that the man could jump off. An hour later, as the train *approach* (20) Newcastle Station, the ticket-collector *hold* (21) the man out of the window and he *begin* (22) running in mid-air. When they *reach* (23) the station, the ticket-collector gently *drop* (24) the man onto the platform

and he *run* (25) very fast along it. The guard, at the back of the train, *see* (26) a man running along the platform. He *put out* (27) his hand and *pull* (28) the man onto the train. 'Lucky I *see* (29) you,' *say* (30) the guard. 'You almost *miss* (31) the train.'

### 3.9\* *Open the brackets using Past Perfect.read and retell the story.*

#### **Fortune Teller**

Many hundreds of years ago a king went to see a fortune teller to know about his future life. The fortune teller told the king, «Your wife will die this year». But the king didn't believe what the fortune teller ... **(to predict)**. Later that year the king's wife died. The king remembered what the fortune teller ... **(to tell)** him and thought that she ... **(to cause)** the death of his wife. So he decided to put the fortune teller to death. After the soldiers ... **(to bring)** the fortune teller to the king, he reminded her of what she ... **(to predict)**. «If you are a real fortune teller, you must know the day of your own death», said the king. The fortune teller realized that the king ... **(to decide)** to kill her. So she thought very carefully and then answered, «I'll die three days before you do, your majesty».

#### **IV. Future Perfect** (майбутній доконаний час)

Позначає дію, яка закінчиться до певного моменту або початку іншої дії в майбутньому або буде продовжуватися, тривати після нього.

Час Future Perfect утворюється за допомогою допоміжного дієслова **to have** в майбутньому часі і при участі колишніх часів основного дієслова, тобто його «третьої форми». To have в майбутньому часі має дві форми: **shall have** - 1 особа. **will have** - 2 і 3 особа.

<b>Стверджувальна форма</b>  +	I will (I'll)/shall ('ll) have done you will ('ll) have done he will ('ll) have done she will ('ll) have done it will ('ll) have done we will ('ll) / shall ('ll) have done they will (I'll) have done
--	--



<b>Питальна форма ?</b>	Shall I have done? Will I have done? Will he have done? Will she have done? Will it have done? Shall we have done? Will they have done?
<b>Заперечна (негативна) форма -</b>	I shall not/shan't / will not/won't have done you will not/won't have done he will not/won't have done she will not/won't have done it will not/won't have done we will not/won't shall not/shan't have done they will not/won't have done

Обставинами часу більш-менш точно вказують час, до якого дія закінчилася:

by five o'clock - до п'ятої години

by noon - до полудня

by Saturday - до суботи

by that time - до того часу

by the end of the year - до кінця року

by then - на той час

before - перед

We shall have translated the article  
by five o'clock.

- Ми (вже) переведемо статтю до п'ятої години.

I shall have finished the report  
by tonight.

- Я закінчу писати доповідь до вечора.

The workers will have built  
this school by September 1st.

- Будівельники побудують цю школу до 1 вересня.

**4.1 Make up the sentences using the Future Perfect Tense.**

- 1) Jim/to write/the report/by next Thursday.
- 2) We/to clean/ the house/by the time of your arrival tomorrow.
- 3) I/to prepare/ all the documents/by the beginning of the meeting tomorrow.
- 4) The film/to finish/by 7 o'clock tomorrow.
- 5) They/to decorate/the square/by the beginning of the demonstration/next week.
- 6) The President/to finish/the press conference/by 3 o'clock tomorrow.
- 7) Diana/to design/your wedding dress/by next Friday.
- 8) I/to move/to a new house/by Christmas».
- 9) You/to start/your own business/by the time you are twenty-seven.
- 10) My father/to repair/his car/by Thursday.

**4.2 Put the verbs in brackets into the Future Perfect Tense.**

- 1) Mike ... (to prepare) all the calculations by the end of his working day tomorrow.
- 2) I... (to learn) some phrases in Japanese by the time the participants of the Japanese delegation arrive.
- 3) The chef ... (to cook) all the dishes by the time the banquet begins.
- 4) The secretary ... {to arrange) all the papers by the time the boss comes to the office tomorrow.
- 5) The ferry ... (to reach) the port by 4 o'clock tomorrow.
- 6) They ... (to deliver) our pizza by the beginning of the party tomorrow.
- 7) Jack and Monica ... (to send) all the invitations by next Tuesday.
- 8) I ... (to read) your report by tomorrow morning.
- 9) The workers ... (/o unload) the lorries by the end of their working day.
- 10) We ... (to analyse) the results of the experiment by next Friday.

**4.3 Make the sentences negative and interrogative.**

- 1) We will have played two games of cricket by 6 o'clock tomorrow.
- 2) They will have left the country by next Monday.
- 3) She will have returned from the walk by 8 o'clock tomorrow.
- 4) We will have done the shopping by 5 o'clock tomorrow.
- 5) Martin will have passed all the exams by next Wednesday.

- 6) You will have known the results of the test by tomorrow evening.
- 7) Angela will have written the essay by Tuesday.
- 8) The workers will have finished decorating our house by next month.
- 9) The performance will have finished by 8 o'clock.
- 10) The weather will have changed by tomorrow evening.

**4.4 Open the brackets and put the verb in the Future Perfect Tense form.**

1. I (finish) this book by tomorrow evening.
2. By the end of next year I (be) here for twenty-five years.
3. At the rate he is going he (spend) all his money by the time he is twenty-five.
4. The train (leave) before we reach the station.
5. If I continue with my diet I (lose) 10 kilos by the end of the month.
6. By this time next year I (save) 1000 dollars.
7. By the end of my university course I (attend) 1,200 lectures.
8. When you come back I (finish) all the housework.
9. We (drink) all the wine by the end of the year.
10. When we reach Brest we (do) half of the journey.
11. If we don't hurry the sun (rise) before we reach the top.
12. By next April I (pay) 3,000 dollars in income tax.
13. On 21 October they (be) married for twenty-five years.
14. By next winter they (build) four houses in that street.
15. At this rate you (break) all the wine glasses by the end of the month.
16. I'm going to Hyde Park to hear people making speeches. – You'll be too late. By the time you get there they (finish) their speeches and everybody (go) home.

**4.5 Open the brackets and put the verb in the Future Perfect Tense form. Pay attention to negative and interrogative sentences.**

1. By the end of the spring we ... (do) five exams.
2. You ... (eat) something by the time the bus arrives?
3. By the time he is 30 years old he ... (make) his first million of dollars.
4. Our plane ... (not land) by 9 o'clock.
5. Your favourite programme already ... (start) by the time we come home.

6. I'm afraid Max ... (not receive) my parcel by Christmas.
7. They ... (write down) all the exercises by the end of the lesson?
8. Next year Brad and Angelina ... (be married) for 25 years.
9. I think she ... (not finish) her essay by Wednesday.
10. The workers ... (build) the swimming-pool by next autumn?

**4.6 Jessica dreams of a great future. See what she dreams about and write sentences using the verbs in Future Perfect Tense.**



*E.g.: By the next week I will have bought a new bicycle.*

When I'm 25 years old – to open a Ballet School

1. Next year – to start learning French
2. In 2050 – to travel the world
3. When I get married – to graduate from the university
4. At the end of this year – to learn figure-skating
5. In December – to visit my aunt in Australia
6. When I'm 40 years old – to have three children
7. Next summer – to finish my book of poems.

**4.7 Translate into English**

1. До цього часу завтра я вже завершу проект.
2. До восьмої години діти вже заснуть.
3. До завтрашнього ранку він відмінно виспиться.
4. До наступного року вона отримає очікуване просування по службі.
5. До наступної робори Пітер вже продасть свій автомобіль.
6. В цей час завтра зранку вони почнуть працювати.

7. Морган прибере весь будинок до часу вечері.
8. Ми зтанцюємо декілька танців до піночі.
9. До 2015 року я буду жити в Лондоні вже десять років.
10. До цього часу на наступному тижні ми вже спіймаємо злодія.

**4.8 Open the brackets and put the verb in Future Perfect or Future Simple.**

1. By next June he \_\_\_\_\_ (write) his second novel.
2. He \_\_\_\_\_ (finish) this work before you \_\_\_\_\_ (leave).
3. By the end of the summer she \_\_\_\_\_ (teach) us to speak Italian.
4. The meeting \_\_\_\_\_ (finish) by the time we \_\_\_\_\_ (get) there.
5. I \_\_\_\_\_ (do) my homework tomorrow.
6. By next week he \_\_\_\_\_ (sell) all his furniture.
7. I hope it \_\_\_\_\_ (stop) raining by 5 o'clock.
8. The builder says he \_\_\_\_\_ (finish) the roof by Saturday.
9. The car \_\_\_\_\_ (do) 100,000 miles soon.
10. They \_\_\_\_\_ (build) the road by the end of the year.
11. In a couple of years the children \_\_\_\_\_ (leave) home and we \_\_\_\_\_ (buy) a smaller house.
12. He \_\_\_\_\_ (take) his exam by his next birthday.

**V. Present Perfect Continuous (теперішній доконаний тривалий час)**

Утворюється за допомогою дієслова **to be** у формі **Present Perfect** і **Participle I** основного дієслова: **have been doing**.

<b>Стверджувальна форма</b> ++	I (We/You/They) <b>have been reading</b> since morning
	He (She/It) <b>has been reading</b> since morning
<b>Питальна форма</b> ?	<b>Have</b> I (We/You/They) <b>been reading</b> since morning?
	<b>Has</b> he(he) <b>been reading</b> since morning?
<b>Заперечна</b>	I (We/You/They) <b>have not been reading</b> since morning

(негативна) форма -	He (She/It) <b>has not been reading</b> since morning
---------------------------	---

1. Означає дію, що почалося в минулому, що тривала до теперішнього моменту і все ще триває. Зазвичай супроводжується прийменниками: **since**, що позначає відправну точку: *I have been learning English since last summer i for*, що позначає період часу: *I have been teaching for 10 years*. В цьому випадку дієслово в **Present Perfect Continuous** перекладається українською теперішнім часом.

2. Означає дію в розвитку, яке недавно або тільки що закінчилося: *The ground is wet. It has been raining*. В цьому випадку дієслово в **Present Perfect Continuous** перекладається українською дієсловом в минулому часі недоконого виду.

### Present Perfect Simple and Continuous

1. Ми часто використовуємо тривалий час з питанням **How long?**: *How long have you been learning English?*

Простий час **Present Perfect Simple** часто використовується з питаннями **How much? How many ?**: *How many pages have you read?*

2. Використовуючи тривалий час, ми цікавимося самою діяльністю: *My hands are very dirty. I've been repairing the car.*

Використовуючи простий час, ми цікавимося результатом: *The car is OK again now. I've repaired it.*

3. С дієсловами **live** and **work** можна вживати будь-який час: *Tom has lived in London for a long time. Tom has been living in London for a long time.*

4. Пам'ятайте, що ряд дієслів не вживається в тривалих часах!

*like love hate want need prefer know realize suppose mean understand believe recognize be remember belong contain consist depend seem find see hear smell taste feel have( належати)*

**5.1 For each situation two sentences (Present Perfect Simple / Present Perfect Continuous).**

*E.g. Tom started reading a book two hours ago. He is still reading it and now he is on page*

53. (*read / for two hours*) ... (*read / 53 pages so far*) ...

***Tom has been reading for two hours. Tom has read 53 pages so far.***

1. Linda is from Australia. She is traveling round Europe at the moment. She began her tour three months ago. (*travel / for three months*) ... (*visit / six countries so far*) ... 2.

Jimmy is a tennis player. He began playing tennis when he was ten years old. This year he is the national champion again - for the fourth time. (*win / the national championship four times*) ... (*play / tennis since he was ten*) ... . 3. When they left college, Mary and

Sue started making films together. They still make films. (*make / ten films since they left college*) ... (*make / films since they left college*)

***5.2 For each situation ask questions using the words in brackets (Present Perfect Simple / Present Perfect Continuous).***

*E.g. You have a friend who is learning Arabic. You ask: (how long/ learn / Arabic?)... **How long have you been learning Arabic?***

1. You have just arrived to meet a friend. She is waiting for you. You ask: (how long/wait?)

2. You see somebody fishing by the river. You ask: (how many fish / catch?)

3. Some friends of yours are having a party next week. You ask: (how many people / invite?)

4. A friend of yours is a teacher. You ask: (how long/ teach?)

5. You meet somebody who is a writer. You ask: (how many books / write?) (how long / write / books?)

6. A friend of yours is saving money to go on holiday. You ask: (how long/ save?) (how much money / save?)

***5.3 Put the verb at the correct time (Present Perfect Simple / Present Perfect Continuous).***

Where have you been? ... (you/play) tennis? 2. Look! Somebody ... (break) that window.

3. You look tired. ... (you/work) hard? 4. "... (you/ever/work) in a factory?" "No, never." 5. "Jane is away on holiday." "Oh, is she? Where ... (she/go)?" 6. My brother

is an actor. He ... (appear) in several films. 7. "Sorry I'm late." "That's all right. I ... (not/wait) long." 8. "Is it still raining?" "No, it ... (stop)." 9. I ... (lose) my address

book. ... (you/see) it anywhere? 10. I ... (read) the book you lent me but I ... (not/finish) it yet. 11. I ... (read) the book you lent me, so you can have it back now.

**5.4 Choose the correct time: Present Simple, Present Continuous або Present Perfect Continuous.**

1. а) Вона читає.  
б) Вона читає зранку.
2. а) Вони грають в волейбол.  
б) Вони грають в волейбол з третьої години.
3. а) Ми вивчаємо англійську.  
б) Ми вивчаємо англійську з 1998 року.
4. а) Мій тато працює в інституті.  
б) Мій тато працює в інституті з 1995 року.
5. а) Моя бабуся готує обід.  
б) Моя бабуся готує обід з другої години.
6. а) Моя сестра спить.  
б) Моя сестра спить з п'ятої години.
7. а) Мама прибирає квартиру.  
б) Мама прибирає квартиру з ранку.
8. а) Дідусь дивиться телевізор.  
б) Дідусь дивиться телевізор з шостої години.
9. а) Мій дядя пише вірші.  
б) Мій дядя пише вірші з дитинства.

**5.5. Open the brackets and put the verb Present Simple, Present Continuous, Present Perfect, Present Perfect Continuous.**

1. He (to run) now. He (to run) for ten minutes without any rest. 2. What they (to do) now? – They (to work) in the reading-room. They (to work) there for already three hours. 3. Where he (to be) now? – He (to be) in the garden. He (to play) volley-ball with his friends. They (to play) since breakfast time. 4. I (to live) in St. Petersburg. I (to live) in St. Petersburg since 1990. 5. She already (to do) her homework for two hours; but she (not yet to do) half of it. 6. I (to wait) for you since two o'clock. 7.



What you (to do)? – I (to read). I (to read) for already two hours. I already (to read) sixty pages. 8. This man (to be) a writer. He (to write) books. He (to write) books since he was a young man. He already (to write) eight books. 9. What you (to do) here since morning? 10. Lena is a very good girl. She always (to help) her mother about the house. Today she (to help) her mother since morning. They already (to wash) the floor and (to dust) the furniture. Now they (to cook) dinner together. 11. This is the factory where my father (to work). He (to work) here for fifteen years. 12. You (to find) your note-book? – No! I still (to look) for it. I already (to look) for it for two hours, but (not yet to find) it. 13. You (to play) with a ball for already three hours. Go home and do your homework. 14. Wake up! You (to sleep) for ten hours already. 15. I (to wait) for a letter from my cousin for a month already, but (not yet to receive) it.

## VI. Past Perfect Continuous (минулий доконаний тривалий час)

**Past Perfect Continuous** вказує на дію, яка почалася в минулому, тривала протягом деякого часу і або закінчилося безпосередньо перед якимось моментом в минулому, або все ще не закінчилося до якогось моменту в минулому.

for two hours протягом двох годин	since I came з тих пір, як я прийшов
for a month протягом місяця	all his life все його життя
for some time протягом деякого часу	all day long весь день
since five o'clock з п'яти годин	

Past Perfect Continuous утворюється за допомогою допоміжного дієслова **to be** у формі **Past Perfect (had been)** і дієприкметника теперішнього часу основного дієслова - **Present Participle (IV-я форма або ing-форма)**.

Стверджувальна	I (We/You/They) <b>had been reading</b> since morning
----------------	---

<b>форма</b> +	He (She/It) <b>had been reading</b> since morning
<b>Питальна форма</b> ?	<b>Had</b> I (We/You/They) <b>been reading</b> since morning?
<b>Заперечна (негативна) форма</b> -	I (We/You/They) <b>had not been reading</b> since morning He (She/It) <b>had not been reading</b> since morning

*I had been typing this text for 2 hours and then found it on the Internet.* - Я набирав цей текст дві години, а потім знайшов його в Інтернеті.

*I saw many puddles. Had it been raining?* - Я бачив багато калюж. Йшов дощ?

*Of course he did not want to sleep! He had not been working like a horse all the week.* - Зрозуміло, йому не хотілося спати! Він не працював як віл весь тиждень.

Якщо не вказано, як довго відбувалася дія, то **замість Past Perfect Continuous** вживається **Past Continuous**:

*I was working when my brother came* - Я працював, коли прийшов мій брат.

### **6.1 Complete the sentences using the Past Perfect Continuous Tense.**

Example: ... before we came from the supermarket. Liz/ to clean/the flat/for two hours.

– Liz had been cleaning the flat for two hours before we came from the supermarket.

1) ... before Tom came to the court. Helen/to play/tennis/for an hour and a half.

2) ... before he retired. Mr Black/to work /as a lawyer/for twenty-five years.

3) ... when the bus arrived. We/ to wait/for forty minutes.

4) Sheila looked tired because ... . She/to sew/a dress/for her little daughter/all day.

5) Before Jack got to level four ... . He/to play/the same game/for three hours.

6) Mike's neighbours were angry because ... . He/to listen/to loud music /for four hours/yesterday evening.

- 7) Everybody was very hungry because ... . They/to work/all day/without/a break for lunch.
- 8) ... when suddenly the car broke down. We/ to drive/for five hours.
- 9) ... before the plane landed in the airport late in the evening yesterday. They/to fly/for six hours.
- 10) ... since Easter, Alex and Den/to prepare/for the exams.

**6.2 Make the sentences negative and interrogative.**

- 1) Brian had been trying to find a better job for three weeks.
- 2) Little Johnny had been riding his new bike all day yesterday.
- 3) Robert and Frank had been fixing that computer for two hours yesterday.
- 4) Julia had been typing the report all the morning yesterday.
- 5) It had been raining all night last Tuesday.
- 6) The Smiths had been building their house for four years.
- 7) We had been skating for three hours yesterday.
- 8) You had been decorating the classroom for more than two hours last Saturday.
- 9) The twins had been fighting in the backyard when their mother saw them.
- 10) Molly had been speaking on the phone for an hour and a half yesterday evening.

**6.3 Find mistakes and correct them.**

- 1) Ann had been done the ironing for two hours yesterday.
- 2) We had tried to catch a taxi for twenty-five minutes last Sunday before we managed to stop one.
- 3) Margaret had been not surfing the Net all day yesterday.
- 4) Nigel had being trying to get in touch with you for a week.
- 5) Had been they waiting for a bus for half an hour last Wednesday?
- 6) How long Nelly had been speaking on the phone yesterday?
- 7) Had Sue been sunbathing all day yesterday? – No, she had.
- 8) They have been dancing for more than an hour yesterday before Helen got tired.
- 9) Who had played the piano in your room from 3 to 4 o'clock yesterday?
- 10) Why had been crying your baby all the morning yesterday?

**6.3 Put the verbs in brackets into Past Perfect Continuous Tense.**

1. They ... (live) in this city for almost three years when their son came back to England.
2. We were very wet when we came home because we ... (walk) in the rain for a long time.
3. Bob tried to stop Dan who ... (shout) for the last ten minutes.
4. Angela rose from the arm-chair in which she ... (sit) at least for two hours.
5. David saw that Mary ... (cry) because her eyes were wet and red but didn't say anything.
6. I thought we had to come to the solution of this problem which we ... (discuss) for hours already.
7. She ... (learn) French for five years before she could speak fluently
8. How long ... she ... (wait) before he came?
9. When I met David, he ... just... (open) a new bank account.
10. Miss Burn ... (work) only for about half an hour when she heard it.
11. The children ... (go) to school by bus for three months, when they cancelled the school bus service.
12. When the parents arrived, he ... (play) computer games since 3 o'clock and hadn't done his homework.
13. ... you (cook) the cake long enough when you took it out?
14. Sam ... (not talk) very loudly so in the end I couldn't understand him at all.
15. It was lunchtime and Tom ... (work) for four hours when his boss came.

**6.4 Read the situation and write your own sentence using Past Perfect Continuous.**

1. Mary woke up suddenly. She was frightened.  
She/to dream/a nightmare\_\_\_\_\_ .
2. Jim came home. He was tired. His hands were dirty.  
He/to work/ in the garden\_\_\_\_\_ .
3. When parents entered the room, but there was a strong smell of cigarettes.  
Someone/ to smoke /in the room\_\_\_\_\_ .
4. When the test was over, the students looked really tired.  
They/to write/for two hours\_\_\_\_\_ .

5. Ann came from the beach. Her skin was red.

She/ to lie/ in the sun/ too much\_\_\_\_\_ .

6. When the children came home, dinner was ready, but mother was tired and couldn't eat at all.

She/ to cook/ since morning\_\_\_\_\_ .

7. I really had to go to the dentist because one of the teeth/ ache /for weeks.

8. When the company went bankrupt, nothing could change the situation.

It/lose/money for months\_\_\_\_\_ .

9. Henry was stopped by the police.

He/drive/too fast\_\_\_\_\_ .

10. We started to play football at about three. Somewhere about half past three it began to rain.

We/ play football/ for about half an hour\_\_\_\_\_ .

**6.5 Choose the correct verb form (Past Perfect Simple or Continuous).**

1. The flat was dirty. They hadn't (cleaned/ been cleaning) it for weeks.

2. I was sad when I sold my car because I had (had/been having) it for a very long time.

3. I knew all those facts because I had (read/ been reading) about it in the report.

4. My stomach ached because I had (eaten/been eating) too much at the party.

5. He was very nervous at the beginning of the match because he had never (played/been playing) in the prime league before.

6. The roads were wet and dangerous because it had (rained/been raining) all night.

7. When I arrived at the party, Ann had already (left/been leaving).

8. We were good friends and we had (known/been knowing) each other for a long time.

9. They had (walked/been walking) for five hours before they reached the village.

10. I had (felt/been feeling) sleepy all day so I had to drink a lot of coffee.

11. We were extremely tired at the end of the journey. We had (travelled/been travelling) for more than a month.

12. She was sitting on the ground and was out of breath because she had (run/been running) the marathon.

### 6.6 Translate into English.

- а) Я чекала його вже 40 хвилин, коли він нарешті прийшов.
- б) Коли вони прийшли на вечірку, всі гості розішлись по будинкам.
- в) Оля не сказала мені, що минулого вівторка вона бачилась з моїм братом.
- г) Виявилось, вона працювала вже чотири години, перед тим як керівник помітив її.
- д) Майк вже навчився читати, коли йому виповнилося 5 років.
- е) Дівчина була вся мокрою. Напевно, вона плавала.
- ж) До кінця року народ обрав нового президента.

## VII. Future Perfect Continuous (майбутній доконаний тривалий час)

**Future Perfect Continuous** використовується для опису дії, яка починається до певного моменту в майбутньому і триває до цього моменту. Акцент робиться на тому, як довго триває дія, і, звичайно, присутня вказівка на період часу. Future Perfect Continuous вживається дуже рідко.

Час Future Perfect Continuous утворюється за допомогою допоміжного дієслова to be в часі Future Perfect (**will have been**) і дієприкметника **теперішнього часу**, утвореного від основного дієслова (тобто інфінітив дієслова + закінчення -ing).

<b>Стверджувальна форма</b> ++	<b>I (We/You/They) will have been reading</b> since morning
	<b>He (She/It) will have been reading</b> since morning
<b>Питальна форма</b>	<b>Will I have (We/You/They) been reading</b> since morning?

?	<b>Will</b> he(she) <b>have been reading</b> since morning?
<b>Заперечна (негативна) форма</b>	I (We/You/They) <b>will have not been reading</b> since morning
-	He (She/It) <b>will have not been reading</b> since morning

We are leaving for London in May. When you come there in August, we will have been staying in England for three month. - Ми поїдемо до Лондону в травні. Коли ти прийдеш туди в серпні, ми вже пробуємо в Англії три місяці.

I hear, you are going to retire next month? For how many years will you have been working here by that time? - Я чув, в наступному місяці Ви виходите на пенсію? Скільки на той час Ви вже тут будете працювати?

By October we will not have been living here for five years. - До жовтня ми не будемо жити тут вже п'ять років.

### 7.1 Make up the sentences using the Future Perfect Continuous Tense.

- 1) By the beginning of April/my father/to work as the General Manager of this corporation/for fifteen years.
- 2) By 8 o'clock/we/ to surf the Net/for five hours.
- 3) By the end of next month/we/ to live/in this city/for ten years.
- 4) By the end of this day /Dolly/ not to design/this fancy dress/for seven hours.
- 5) Ted/to work/ as an attorney/for twenty years/by the end of March?
- 6) Jack and Alison/to build/their house/for a year by Easter?
- 7) My parents/ to run/this cafe/for six years/by next September.
- 8) By 4 o'clock/ they/to play volleyball/for three hours.
- 9) By 3 o'clock/the students/to write/the test for two hours and a half.
- 10) By next Friday/ Henry /to train/for the competition/for ten months.

### 7.2 Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form.

- 1) By the 25th of December she ... (to work) on this project for six months.

- 2) By Saturday, Fred ... (topaint) this picture for two weeks.
- 3) We ...(to study) marketing for a year by the end of the academic year.
- 4) By tomorrow morning Laura ... (to sleep) for twelve hours.
- 5) ... they ... (to work) together for ten years by the end of May? – Yes, they ....
- 6) ... Nick ... (to train) for four hours by 6 o'clock? – No, he ... .
- 7) By 5 o'clock Jessica ... (to sit) at the dentist's for three hours.
- 8) By 12 o'clock the children ... (to swim) for two hours.
- 9) By the end of the day the workers ... (topaint) this house for nine hours.
- 10) By 6 o'clock in the evening we ... (to wait) for his message for five hours.

### ***7.3 Open the brackets using Future Perfect Continuous.***

1. By next week the group \_\_\_\_\_ (shoot) their clip for twenty days.
2. By Easter Sandy and Malory \_\_\_\_\_ (work) together for 7 years.
3. In some minutes, Fred \_\_\_\_\_ (wait) for 2 hours already.
4. We'll be halfway through our swim in an hour so we \_\_\_\_\_ (swim) non-stop for 48 hours.
5. If Melissa is still on the phone at 5pm, Fred \_\_\_\_\_ (to talk) to her for over six hours.
6. By the time Mike arrives, Megan \_\_\_\_\_ (read) the funny book for 4 hours.
7. By July the Stevensons \_\_\_\_\_ (build) their cottage for a year.
8. If nobody stops Fred, he \_\_\_\_\_ (grumble) till night.

### ***7.4 Make up the sentences using Future Perfect Continuous.***

1. been / will / the New Year / a teacher / for / working / by / Andrew / have / as / 15 years.
2. for / Mark / before / will / been / at the conference / Moscow / leaves / working / he / have / for 2 days.
3. for / at Christmas / writing / will / she / have / her / new / been / novel / seven years?
4. go / the competition / for / their / before / training / have / they / to / coach / will / been / them / three months.

### ***7.5 Translate into English.***



1. Я вже три дні про це думаю. 2. Моя сестра п'є каву с молоком. А я завжди віддавав перевагу чорній каві. 3. Ми дуже раді вас бачити. Ми вас чекали цілий місяць. 4. Ви все ще читаете цю книгу? Скільки часу ви її вже читаете? 5. Моя сестра займається музикою вже п'ять років. 6. Я шукаю тебе весь вечір. Де ти був весь цей час? 7. Вони пишуть твір вже дві години. 8. Ми знаємо один одного вже чотири роки. 9. Я завжди хотів вивчати англійську мову. 10. Де Ніна? – Вона вже "дві години вдома. 11. Де діти? – Вони все ще грають на подвір'ї. 12. Мій брат вже три роки інженер. 13. Мій друг знає англійську з дитинства. 14. Я вже пів години спостерігаю за тобою. 15. Ваш брат ще хворий? – Ні, він вже поправився. Він вже три дні займається фізикою. Він хоче отримати відмінну оцінку на екзамені.

### ***7.6 Translate into English.***

1. Коли наша дочка піде в школу, ми вже будемо жити в цьому місті 10 років.
2. В кінці місяця буде 5 років, як я вчу китайську.
3. На той час, як Майкл закінчить коледж, його батько пропрацює в Болівії два роки.
4. Я буду писати третій портрет на той час, як Моллі повернеться.
5. Вони будуть дивитися цей серіал поки ти не скачаєш новий.

## **PART 3. Reading**

### **Vocabulary**

#### ***Learn the following words:***

apparatus of advanced design [əpə'reitəs əv əd'vɑ:nst di'zain] – прилади сучасної конструкції

to carry out ['kæri 'aut] – виконувати

to develop [di'veləp] – розвивати

education [ˈedʒu'keɪʃn] – освіта

to be engaged in – займатися, бути зайнятим

establishment [es'təʃbliʃmənt] – установа

to equip [i'kwɪp] – обладнувати  
 equipment [ɪk'wɪpmənt] – обладнання  
 experienced – досвідчений  
 field of knowledge [.. 'nɒlɪdʒ] – галузь знань  
 free – 1) вільний, 2) безкоштовний  
 higher educational institution [haɪə...] – вищий навчальний заклад  
 to include [ɪn'klu:d] – містити в собі, включати  
 Internet facilities [fə'sɪlɪtɪz] – вихід до інтернету  
 to make a contribution [...kəntri'bju:ʃn] – вкладати внесок  
 outstanding [aʊt'stændɪŋ] – визначний  
 to provide [prə'vaɪd] – забезпечувати, надавати  
 research [rɪ'sə:tʃ] – дослідження  
 science ['saɪəns] – наука  
 staff [sta:f] – штат  
 to train [treɪn] – навчати, тренувати, готувати  
 various ['vɛ:riəs] – різноманітний

**1. Practice the pronunciation of the following words. Translate them into Ukrainian.**

Pedagogical [ˌpɛdə'ɡɒdʒɪk(ə)l], technical ['teknɪk(ə)l], pharmaceutical [ˈfɑːmə'sə:tɪk(ə)l], agricultural [ˈægrɪ'kʌltʃ(ə)rəl], faculty ['fak(ə)lti], mathematics [ˈmæθ(ə)'mætɪks], philology [fɪ'lɒlədʒi], culture ['kʌltʃə], pedagogy [ˈpɛdəɡɒdʒi], primary [ˈpraɪm(ə)ri], pre-school [ˈpri:sku:l], psychological [ˈsaɪkə'lɒdʒɪk(ə)l], music [mju:zɪk], lecture [ˈlektʃə], lecturer [ˈlektʃ(ə)rə], science ['saɪəns], scientific [saɪən'tɪfɪk], experienced [ɪk'spɪəriənst], integral [ˈɪntɪgrəl], individuality [ɪndɪvɪdʒu'ælɪti], hydrodynamics [ˌhaɪdrə(ɒ)dɪ'namɪks].

**2. Match the topics and the paragraphs of the text.**

- a) The role of our University
- b) The Faculties

- c) Higher education in Odessa
- d) Opportunities for the students
- e) The Structure
- f) The Staff

***Read and translate the following text.***

### **Our University**



There are different types of higher educational institutions in Ukraine. In Odessa several establishments train specialists in various fields, and among them are Odessa State University, Polytechnical University, Medical University, Agricultural University, Economical University and others. My friends and I study at South Ukrainian National Pedagogical University named after K. D. Ushynsky.

Our University provides higher education for future teachers. Every year a great number of students enter its 12 faculties: the Faculty of Mathematics, the Faculty of Philology, the Faculty of Physical Culture, the Faculty of Primary Schooling, of Psychology and Pedagogy of Childhood, the Faculty of Foreign Languages, the Faculty of History, of Music, the Faculty of Social Pedagogy and others.

The University provides good conditions for scientific research. Our laboratories are equipped with apparatus of advanced design; there are computer classrooms with Internet facilities, study-rooms and workshops in five buildings. All the students are engaged in scientific work under the supervision of experienced teachers. For example, students of the Faculty of History take part in scientific expeditions and carry out research work in various fields of knowledge.

There are almost 500 lecturers together with foreign professors working at 38 departments. The staff of professors, lecturers and instructors is big and includes many outstanding scientists who make a contribution to various fields of knowledge. Several scientific schools have been formed at our University which are well-known in Ukraine

and abroad for their achievements in the sphere of pedagogy, psychology, physics, mathematics.

The administration is housed in the main building. The head of the University is the Rector. Every faculty has a Dean. He or she occupies the Dean's office. The Dean is responsible for the faculty. Every student group has a monitor. The monitor is the leader of the group and is in charge of it.

Our graduates work as school teachers in the Odessa region. South Ukrainian National Pedagogical University plays an important part in developing public education in Ukraine.

### ***3. Answer the following questions.***

1. Are there different types of higher educational institutions in Ukraine?
2. What establishments train specialists in various fields in our city?
3. Does our University provide higher education for future teachers?
4. What faculties are there at our higher educational institution?
7. In what fields do students carry out research?
8. What conditions does the University provide?
9. What is the teaching staff like?
10. What scientific schools are there at the University?
11. Where is the administration housed?
12. Where is your faculty situated?
13. Who is the rector of our university?
14. What is your Dean's name?
15. Who is the leader in a student group?
16. What part does the University play in developing public education in the in Ukraine?

### ***4. Ask your friend.***

1. Які вищі навчальні заклади в нашому місті ти знаєш?
2. В якому університеті ти навчаєшся?

3. Скільки факультетів в нашому університеті?
4. На якому факультеті навчаєшся ти?
5. Які умови для наукової роботи надає університет?
6. В якій області ти виконуєш дослідницьку роботу?
7. Ти збираєшся працювати вчителем в школі?
8. Хто вносить вклад в різні галузі знань?
9. Хто виконує наукові дослідження?
10. Хто є главою університету?
11. Хто знаходиться у деканаті?
12. Хто староста у вашій групі?

## **PART 4 Speaking**

### *Learn some classroom expressions.*

I am sorry, I am late – Вибачте, що я запізнився.

Who is staying away? - Хто відсутній?

All students are present. - Усі студенти присутні.

Are you ready? - Ви готові?

(I am afraid) I am not ready yet - (Боюся,) я ще не готовий.

Who is the monitor? - Хто староста?

Begin reading! - Починайте читати!

Go on working! - Продовжуйте працювати!

Will you translate this word, please? - Будь ласка, переведіть це слово!

What's the Ukrainain for "establishment"? - Що значить українською «establishment»?

Shall I read or translate the text? - Мені читати або перекладати текст?

The time is over. Hand in your papers, please! - Час закінчився. Здавайте роботи, будь ласка!

There goes the bell. - Дзвенить дзвінок.

The bell has gone. - Дзвінок продзвенів.

Let's have a break. - Давайте зробимо перерву.

Let's air the classroom. - Давайте провітримо аудиторію.

Write down your home assignment (home task) - Запишіть домашнє завдання.

### ***Sample Dialogues***

1. *Teacher:* Good morning! Let's begin our classes. Who is the monitor?

*Monitor:* I am.

*Teacher:* Who is staying away?

*Monitor:* All students are present.

2. *Student:* I am sorry, I am late.

*Teacher:* Why are you late?

*Student:* I got stuck in a traffic jam.

*Teacher:* Go to your seat and don't be late next time.

3. *Teacher:* I checked up your test-papers yesterday.

*Students:* What are our results?

*Teacher:* Two papers are excellent, five papers are good, three papers are satisfactory.

One student got a bad mark: he made too many mistakes.

4. *Student A:* Who is the monitor in your group?

*Student B:* Dasha Petrova is.

*Student A:* Where is she now?

*Student B:* She is at the Dean's Office.

*Student A:* What is she doing there?

*Student B:* She is talking to the Deputy Dean.

*Student A:* What are they speaking about?

*Student B:* I think they are speaking about the timetable.

**Role play: "The teacher and students in a class".**

*Use the phrases from the dialogues and the classroom expressions and make your own dialogues.*

### **Lexical Exercises**

#### **1. Answer the questions using the words in brackets.**

1. Are you a student? (first-year, study, faculty)
2. How many faculties are there at the University? What are they? (train/trains teachers of, the course of studies)
3. Are there many laboratories? (is/are equipped, of advanced design, Internet facilities)
4. What does our University provide good conditions for? (research, laboratories, carry out, various fields of knowledge).

#### **2. Read the sentences translating the words in brackets into English.**

1. Odessa Polytechnical University is one of the (вищих навчальних закладів)
3. Nowadays it is an important centre of training specialists (в різних областях) of technology and engineering.
4. The laboratories are equipped (приладами сучасної конструкції).
7. Professors, lecturers and instructors (вносять свій внесок) to science and technology.
9. Polytechnical University provides good conditions for (наукового дослідження).
10. All students (виконують дослідницьку роботу) in various fields (під керівництвом досвідчених викладачів).

#### **3. Fill in the blanks with prepositions and adverbs if necessary.**

1. Pedagogical Universities train specialists ... various fields ... knowledge.
2. There are 12 faculties ... our University, and ... them the Faculty ... Philology and the Faculty ... History.
3. My friends and I study ... the Faculty ... Psychology.
4. Our University is a centre ... training teachers in the Urals.
5. It provides good conditions ... scientific work.

6. We carry... research ... various fields ... knowledge.
7. Here many laboratories are equipped ... apparatus ... advanced design.
8. Our University plays an important part ... developing public education in Ukraine.
9. The teachers ... our University make a contribution ... various fields ... knowledge.
10. The Rector is ... charge ... the University.
11. The Dean is responsible ... the faculty.
12. The monitor is the leader ... the group.

#### 4. Translate into English.

Південноукраїнський національний педагогічний університет імені К. Д. Ушинського – один з найстаріших університетів Одеси. Щороку безліч молодих людей надходить на його факультети. Багато студентів отримують стипендію і живуть в гуртожитку. В університеті багато лабораторій, обладнаних сучасними приладами. Всі студенти проводять наукові дослідження в різних галузях знань. ПНПУ грає важливу роль в розвитку української науки.

#### 5. Fill in the table.

Thing	Person	Thing	Person	Thing	Person
science			friend		educator
psychology		profession		design	
chemistry		library		research	
physics		history			lecturer

#### 6. Write the verbs from which these nouns are formed and translate them into Ukrainian.

Establishment, department, knowledge, equipment, development.

#### 7. Fill in the table.

Noun	Verb	Adjective
------	------	-----------



		research
education		
	produce	
		responsible
		free
		advanced
design		
science	-----	

**Exercise 8. Choose the right word (use it in the correct form).**

1. Students carry out research in all fields of ... . ... research is an important part of higher education. Young ... have many advantages. (scientist, scientific, science)
2. The faculty of ... trains ... . Many of the teachers are brilliant ..., their ... produce a great impression on the listeners. (history, historian, lecture, lecturer)
3. ... is a fashionable science nowadays. Our University ... hundreds of young people every year, and a lot of ... get their ... here. After graduating from the University they will devote themselves to the solution of ... problems of children and adults. (educate, education, psychologist, psychological, psychology)

TEXTS FOR SUPPLEMENTARY READING

TEXT A

**Oxbridge**

Oxford and Cambridge are the oldest and the most prestigious universities in Great Britain. They are often called collectively Oxbridge. Both Universities were founded in the medieval period.

# Oxford



University



They are federations of semi-independent colleges, each college having its own staff, known as “Fellows”. Most colleges have their own dining hall, library and chapel (часовня) and contain enough accommodation for at least half of their students. The Fellows teach the college students either one-to-one – or in small groups, known as “tutorials” in Oxford and “supervisions” in Cambridge. Oxbridge has the lowest student/staff ratio (соотношение) in Britain. Lectures and laboratory work are organized at university level. Before 1970 Oxbridge colleges were single-sex (mostly for men). Now they admit both men and women.

*Say if these statements are true or false.*

1. Oxbridge is a collective name for the oldest and most prestigious universities in Britain.
2. Oxford and Cambridge consist of faculties.
3. Fellows are students at these universities.
4. Lectures are called tutorials and supervisions at Oxbridge.
5. There are fewer teachers at Oxbridge than at other universities.
6. Oxford and Cambridge admit both men and women.

TEXT C

### **Work Experience and Internship Programs**

Through our student work experience program, the education authority provides over 9,000 work experience placements (= jobs for students who want to get work experience) for young people each year. Our program is designed to give chance to

work for students that will enrich their academic studies and help them gain valuable work-related skills in order to find a good job after graduation. A job does not need to be related to a particular field of study and so participants may even discover areas of work they have never considered before.

All post-secondary school students in full-time education can apply for the program. Individual case managers will determine the minimum level academic achievement required for each job. During an academic term, a student may work part-time. During the summer holidays a student may work full-time or part-time. The education authority is responsible for the recruitment (=giving jobs) of all students under the work experience program. Candidates apply in person to our office and we refer them to the appropriate department.

Our internship program (= the program under which young people can work while still studying) is designed specifically for post-secondary students, whether part-time or full-time. Students on the internship program are given an assignment related to their research area offering them the chance to use their academic knowledge in an actual work setting. The academic institution plays an important role in the placement of students under this program and they will determine the duration of a work assignment. These traditionally last four months, but internship assignment may vary from 4 to 18 months. Students in this program normally work full-time.

***1. Say if it is true, false or there is no information in the text.***

1. You can apply for the work experience program if you have finished your secondary education.
2. You must work on the student work experience program full-time during the academic term.
3. This program helps students to find a good job after graduation.
4. You are not allowed to take part in the internship and work experience programs if you have bad marks.

***2. Say which paragraph deals with the following statements.***

- a) To take part in the work experience program, you must come to our office.
- b) The maximum length of an internship assignment is a year and a half.

**3. Choose the correct answer.**

***Who is in charge of providing the participants of the program with jobs?***

- 1. The students have to find jobs themselves.
- 2. The participants are given placements by their University administration.
- 3. The education authority is responsible for finding jobs for all students under this program.

**4. Choose the adequate summary of the text.**

- 1. All secondary and post-secondary school students must get work experience.
- 2. If you are a student and want to get work experience, you may take part in the work experience program and work full-time or part-time.
- 3. It is not easy to find a good job after graduation, therefore you must work hard during the academic term and pass exams successfully.

**5. Read the text. What qualifications are necessary to become a teacher in Great Britain?**

**Teacher Training in England and Wales**

In England and Wales teachers must have gained Qualified Teacher Status (QTS).

To gain QTS a candidate must have completed and passed a teacher training course, such as a Postgraduate Certificate in Education (PGCE) or a teaching degree (BEd), and, in England only, pass the QTS Skills Tests in literacy, numeracy, and ICT (Information and Communications Technology).

QTS is technically only recognised in the country it was awarded (England or Wales), but teachers can normally apply for QTS in the other country with relative ease.

QTS is also recognised by many other countries once the relevant paperwork has been completed.

Teachers trained outside England and Wales must also apply to be awarded QTS if they wish to teach in England and Wales.

After having being awarded QTS teachers must normally still pass an induction period (previously called “probation”) – normally their first year of teaching. Those who fail the induction still retain their QTS, but cannot teach in state-run schools. The induction period normally lasts a year (three school terms). In England it cannot be retaken if failed, but in Wales it can.

In Scotland and Northern Ireland QTS as such does not exist in Scotland or Northern Ireland. However, like in England and Wales, all teachers in Scotland and Northern Ireland are required to register with either the General Teaching Council for Scotland or the General Teaching Council for Northern Ireland; the General Teaching Councils will only consider those with teaching qualifications (such as the PGCE) for registration.

In Scotland a one-year probation period (equivalent to to induction in England and Wales) must be completed.

There are many paths in which a person can work towards gaining their QTS, the most popular of which is to have completed a first degree program (such as a BA or BSc) and then a Post-Graduate Certificate of Education (PGCE). Other methods include a specific teaching degree (BEd) or on-the-job training at a school. All qualified teachers in England must serve, after training, a statutory one year induction period that must be passed in order to remain a registered teacher. In Wales this period lasts for two years. During this period a teacher is known as an NQT (Newly Qualified Teacher). Schools are obliged to provide guidance, support and training to facilitate the NQT's success during this year. Local education authorities are also obliged to provide professional development opportunities.

### **Teacher Training in Scotland**

In Scotland teachers must hold a valid teaching qualification (TQ) and be registered with the General Teaching Council for Scotland. Following initial teacher education and gaining a teaching qualification a Scottish teacher is deemed to be *provisionally registered* with the GTCS and must undergo a year of probation supported through the Scottish Executive’s induction programme.

There are several possible routes to a TQ, including a Bachelor of Education in Music, Physical Education or Technological Education for secondary school or a general BEd for primary school, a Professional Graduate Diploma in Education (PGDE) or a concurrent undergraduate degree combining a Bachelor of Science or Scottish Master of Arts with the initial teacher education elements of a PGDE. Concurrent degrees are only available from the University of Stirling.

A Scottish teacher may only qualify in a subject directly related to their undergraduate or graduate studies.

(from <http://en.wikipedia.org>)

### **Завдання, тести для самоперевірки**

#### **Exercise 1**

*Read an extract and open the brackets using the proper tenses.*

Positano (stand) on the side of a steep hill and is a very picturesque place. In winter lots of painters, male and female, (crowd) its two or three modest hotels, but if you (come) there in summer you will have it to yourself. The hotel (be) clean and cool and there (be) a terrace where you can sit at night and look at the sea. Down on the quay there (be) a little tavern where they (offer) you macaroni, ham, fresh-caught fish and cold wine.

One August, tiring of Capri where I had been staying, I (make up) my mind to spend a few days at Positano, so I (hire) a fishing boat and (row) over, I (arrive) at Positano in the evening. I (stroll) up the hill to the hotel, I (be surprised) to learn that I was not

its only guest. The waiter, whose name was Guiseppe, (tell) me that an American signorc had been staying there for three months. "Is he a painter or a writer or something?" I (ask). "No, signore, he (*be*) a gentleman. You will see the signore at the tavern. He always (dine) there," (*say*) Guiseppe.

## **Exercise 2.**

*A. Give news about yourself and other people to a friend of yours. Use the words given to make sentences in the Present Perfect Tense.*

*Example: My sister/get married. —My sister has got married*

1. I/find/a new job. 2. My father/retire. 3. Jane and Mike/go to work/to Australia. 4. I/buy/a new motorcycle. 5. My niece/start to walk. 6. The Browns/move/to another town. 7. Jack's Grandpa/die. 8. I/join/another football club. 9. Nick and Rita/divorce. 10. John/receive/ a fortune, he/become/a millionaire.

*B. Ask your friend who is in the USA questions about what he or his relatives have seen or done (use the Present Perfect Tense).*

*Example: You/have/a good journey? — Have you had a good journey?*

1. You/already/see/the Great American Lakes? 2. You/be/to Broadway? 3. Mike/manage to see/the Statue of Liberty? 3. What/new places/your brother/show to you? 4. Ann/visit/the White House? 5. Your father/get/ promotion? 6. You/receive/your driving license? 7. Your brother/change/a car? 8, What kind of house/you/buy<sup>1</sup>

*C. Say what you or your friends have not done yet (year, month, etc.).*

*Example: I/not be/to the theatre/this month. — / have not been to the theatre this month,*

1. Sue/not read/Gone with the Wind/yet. 2. Jill/not enter/London University/this year. 3. Larry/not produce/ a new film/yet. 4. Peggy and Paul/not move/to another flat this

month. 5. Pete/not finish/his project yet. 6. My cousin/not get married/this month. 7. Mrs. Brown/not recover/yet. 8. They/not go/on business/this week.

### Exercise 3.

*Open the brackets and put the verb into the correct tense, either the Present Indefinite, the Present Continuous or the Present Perfect.*

1. As a rule, I (have) porridge for breakfast, but this morning I (order) an omelette. 2. This is the house where I (live). I (live) here since childhood. 3. Stop smoking! The room (be) full of smoke which (come) from your pipe. Usually nobody (smoke) here as Mother (not let) it. 4. I (write) letters home once a week, but I (not write) one this week, so my next letter must be rather long. 5. No wonder she (look) tired after the strain under which she (be) for a month. 6. Why you (not shave) this morning? — I (shave) every other day. 7. Research (show) that lots of people (absorb) new information more efficiently at some times of day than at others. A biological rhythm (affect) different people in different ways. 8. I just (look) at the barometer and (see) that it (fall) very quickly. 9. Don't shout so loudly. Father (not finish) work and he hates if anybody (make a noise) while he (work). 10. I regularly (see) him at the tram stop, but I (not see) him these two or three days.

### Exercise 4.

*Open the brackets and put the verb into the correct tense, either the Past Indefinite or the Present Perfect.*

1. You (find) the money which you (lose) yesterday? — Yes, I (find) it in the pocket of my coat when I (come) home. 2. The rain (stop) but a strong wind is still blowing. 3. You (see) Nick today? — Yes, but he already (leave). 4. We never (see) him. We don't even know what he looks like. 5. She (meet) them in the Globus theatre last afternoon. 6. How long you (know) him? — We (meet) in 1996, but we (not see) each other since last autumn. 7. He (live) in St. Petersburg for two years and then (go) to Siberia. 8. When he (arrive)? — He (arrive) at 2 o'clock. 9. I (read) this book when I was at school. 10. I can't go with you because I (not finish) my lessons yet. 11. The



clock is slow. — It isn't slow, it (stop). 12. He (leave) for Canada two years ago and I (not see) him since. 13. This is the fifth cup of coffee you (have) today! 14. It is the most beautiful place I (visit). 16 I (not see) Nick lately. Anything (happen) to him? ~- Yes, he (get) into an accident three weeks ago. Since that time he (be) in hospital. 16. Why you (switch on) the light? It isn't dark yet. 17. He (do) everything already? — Yes, he (do) his part of work long ago. 18. The last post (come)? — Yes, it (come) half an hour ago. 19. When you (meet) him last? 20. You ever (be) to Japan? — Yes, I (be) there the year when there was an earthquake. 21. The discussion already (begin). Why are you always late? 22. Why you (take) my pen while I was out? You (break) it. 23. You never (tell) me why you're called Tony when your name is John. 24, Her father (die) when she was a small girl. 25. They (not meet) since they (leave) school. 26. The rain (stop). Come out, I want to speak with you.

### Exercise 5.

*Match the two parts of these sentences.*

- 1) He caught a cold            a) all day.
- 2) She has been interested , in maths   b) before.
- 3) They went out            c) since last year.
- 4) He has been in love   with her   d) when he was six.
- 5) The Nobel Fund was   set up   e) up to now.
- 6) He has been engaged   at the plant   f) when he had to wait for the bus.
- 7) He hasn't been abroad   g) a few minutes ago.
- 8) I've visited seven   countries   h) in the first half of the 20<sup>th</sup> century.
- 9) Mary and Nick have never quarrelled like this   i) since she began to study it.
- 10) My son started school   j) for two years.

### Exercise 6.

*Choose the correct variant.*

1 \_\_\_ever\_\_\_ to this museum? — Yes, I\_\_\_it once when I\_\_\_a youth, and the pictures\_\_\_ a deep impression on me. Since then I\_\_\_there.

- a) did you be, visited, was, made, was not
- b) were you, visited, was, have made, was not
- c) have you been, have visited, were, have made, have not been
- d) have you been, visited, was, made, have not been

2. I\_\_\_Jack lately. When\_\_\_him last? — I\_\_\_ mm two days ago. I\_\_\_ that he \_\_\_very much.

- a) did not see, have you seen, met, thought, changes
- b) have not seen, did you see, met, think, changed
- c) have not seen, you saw, met, think, changed
- d) do not see, have you seen, have met, thought, would change

3, The Egyptian civilization.\_\_\_ the oldest which\_\_\_ us art. It\_\_\_about five thousand years ago. The story of Egyptian art\_\_\_three thousand years and\_\_\_ the art of different periods.

- a) is, left, began, covers, includes
- b) was, leaves, has begun, covered, included
- c) is, has left, \was began, has covered, has included
- d) has be?n, left, began, covers, included

4,\_\_\_ your tennis racket with you? — Yes, I am going to show you how much I \_\_\_ since last summer. I \_\_\_tennis lessons now. Now it\_\_\_for you to judge if I \_\_\_ any progress,

- a) did you bring, improved, take, is, have made
- b) have you brought, improved, take, was, have made
- c) did you bring, have improved, am taking, is, made
- d) have you brought, have improved, am taking, is, have made

5. \_\_\_ lunch already? — No, not yet. The waitress my order fifteen minutes ago and \_\_\_ me anything yet.

- a) have you, took, has not brought
- b) have you had, took, has not brought
- c) did you have, has taken, did not bring
- d) have you have, was taken, was not brought

### Exercise 7.

*Complete the sentences with the verbs from the box using the Present Perfect Continuous Tense,*

run	make
study	work
consider	do
walk	speak
wait	paint
snow	try

1. He \_\_\_ for two hours, tell him to rest a little. 2 "I \_\_\_ a long time for you," said my friend with a displeased air. 3. They \_\_\_ a noise since I came here. 4. How long

you\_\_\_to get in touch with your friend? 5. Your face is dirty with paint. What you\_\_\_? You\_\_\_the house? 6. They\_\_\_this problem for more than two hours. 7. I ask you to keep to the point, You\_\_\_for fifteen minutes, but the subject of your report is not clear yet. 8. He is a rather experienced specialist. He\_\_\_his business for seven years. 9. There is a lot of snow in the street as it \_\_\_since yesterday. 10. How long your brother\_\_\_as a doctor? 11. I've got sore feet. We\_\_\_for six hours already.

### Exercise 8.

*Open the brackets and put the verbs into the Present Perfect Continuous Tense or the Present Perfect Tense.*

1. I (try) to get into contact with them for a long time, but now I (give) it up as hopeless» 2. My shortsighted uncle (lose) his spectacles. We (look) for them everywhere but we can't find them, 3. She (be) of great help to us since she (live) for such a long time with us, 4. You ever (work) as interpreter? — Yes, that is what I (do) for the last five months, 5. They (make up) their quarrel? — I don't know. I only know that they (not be) on speaking terms since September. 6. Our pilot (ask) for permission to take off for ten minutes already, but he (get) no answer yet. 7. A skilful photographer (help) me with the development of summer films for two weeks, but we (develop) only half of them, 8. I (know) them since we met at Ann's party» 9. You (open) the door at last» I (ring) for an hour at least, it seems to me. 10. Look, the typist (talk) all the time, she already (miss) several words.

### Exercise 9.

*Open the brackets and put the verbs into the proper tense, either the Present Continuous or the Present Perfect Continuous Tense.*

1. Don't come in, He (take) an exam. He (take) his exam for half an hour already. 2. Where are the children? — They (play volleyball). They (play volleyball) since 3 o'clock. 3. I (learn) to type for a month and can say that my typing (improve). 4. Nick (come) round to see us tonight. 5. He (stay) at his sister's for six weeks» He (try) to find somewhere to live. 6. We can't dance as my father (work) in the study. He

(prepare) a report. He (write) it for the whole day. 7. Do you see what the child (do) with your hat? Take it from him. 8. They still (discuss) the article? But they (do) it since twelve o'clock! 9. The prices (go up). They (rise) since 1991. 10. What a strong wind (blow)! It (blow) since yesterday.

### **Exercise 10**

*Open the brackets and put the verbs into the proper tense (the Present Indefinite, the Present Continuous, the Present Perfect Continuous or the Present Perfect Tense).*

1. It (snow) steadily the whole week and it still (snow). 2. We (climb) for six hours already, but we (not reach) the top of the mountain yet. 3. The pain already (go) but the child still (cry). 4. The workers (work) very hard these two weeks, they (be) busy with the interior decoration of the house. 5. He (solve) the crossword puzzle for an hour and he (say) he (be) about to solve it as he (think) over the last word . 6. He (work) at the language all the time and (make) great progress. His pronunciation (be) rather good, only a slight accent (remain). 7. He (finish) the first part of his book and now he (write) the second. He (work) at his book for two years, 8. Dusliri Hoffman, who (play) the hero, (give) a fine performance. 9. Why your hair (be) wet? You (swim)? 10, Doctors and scientists (show) recently the benefit of fish in the diet.

### **Exercise 11.**

*Find the mistakes if any. Use the proper tense.*

1. When I came, he was having breakfast. 2. When she worked there, she often made mistakes. 3. When he was phoning, she had a bath, 4. While I was ironing, he read a newspaper, 5. I cooked supper when I heard this news. 6. He was working in this company in 1997. 7. I could not answer your call, I worked in the garden then. 8. They wished to stay because they enjoyed themselves,  
9, Were you quarreling all evening? 10. The train was approaching the city when it was raining heavily, 11. The secretary still typed when the boss came in and was putting some documents on the table. 12. When he came up to the square, he saw a lot

of people: they sang, danced and shouted. They were celebrating New Year, 13. Just as I was coming into the room, the students discussed the first report. 14, All the time I was writing, he was annoying me with silly questions. 15, The children played while the mother put the room in order.

### **Exercise 12.**

*Choose the right variant using the Present Perfect, the Past Indefinite or the Past Continuous Tense.*

1. While I (was waiting/waited/have waited) for him to call up, he (had/was having/have had) a good time in the bar. 2. She (has written/wrote/was writing) this exercise yesterday at 8 o'clock. 3. He (has invited/was inviting/ invited) me to the party yesterday. 4. I (passed/have passed/ was passing) my exam in history today. 5. He (read/has read/was reading) a book two days ago. 6. They (have seen/ saw/were seeing) this film last week. 7. She (painted/has painted/was painting) the picture when I came. 8. I (made/ have made/was making) my report when you entered the hall. 9. They (learnt/were learning/have learnt) the new words yesterday from three till seven. 10. It (rained/has rained/was raining) this week. 11. She (was having/had/ has had) a bath at seven o'clock last night. 12. She (was washing/washed/has washed) dishes already. 13. They (had/have had/were having) supper when the telephone rang, 14. I (didn't meet/haven't met/was not meeting) you for ages. 15. Last summer he (has gone/was going/ went) to the Caucasus. 16, She was thoughtfully looking at him while he (read/was reading/has read) a newspaper. 17. While I (swept/was sweeping/has swept) the floor, Mrs, Parker began cooking. 18. I just (had/have had/was having) a telegram to say that my poor friend is badly ill again. 19. We (sat/were sitting/have sat) in silence for a few minutes. He (spoke/was speaking/has spoken) at last. 20. While she (washed/was washing/has washed up), she (was hearing/heard/has heard) the doorbell, then voices. 21. "She (was making/made/has made) tea, let's go to the dining room". 22. Only two stars (shone/were shining/ has shone) in the dark blue sky. 23. On glancing at the address, he observed that it (contained/was containing/ has contained) no name. 24. He just (left/was leaving/has

left) the hall when a stranger (entered/was entering/has entered). 25.1 (met/was meeting/have met) Ann at her father's house twenty years ago and (knew/have known/was knowing) her ever since.

### Exercise 13.

*Choose the right variant.*

1. Higher education in the US \_\_\_ in 1636 when the first colonists \_\_\_ Harvard College.

- a) has begun, founded
- b) began, have founded
- c) began, founded
- d) was beginning, have founded

2. Noah Webster \_\_\_ *An American Dictionary of the English Language* in two volumes in 1828, and since then it \_\_\_ the recognized authority for usage in the United States.

- a) published, became
- b) has published, has become
- c) published, was becoming
- d) published, has become

3. He \_\_\_ at Oxford then. He was not the best student, though he \_\_\_ well known among the second year students.

- a) was studying, became
- b) was studying, has become
- c) studied, became
- d) has studied, has become

4. One day when he \_\_\_ home he \_\_\_ a boy who \_\_\_ him from the opposite side of the street.

- a) was walking, saw, watched
- b) walked, has seen, was watching
- c) was walking, saw, was watching
- d) has walked, has seen, has watched

5. It was midnight. She \_\_\_ in her lonely room. The rain driven by the rain \_\_\_ against the window.

- a) sat, beat
- b) was sitting, was beating
- c) has sat, beat
- d) has been sitting, has been beating

#### **Exercise 14.**

*Choose the right variant.*

1.1 \_\_\_ to the USA so far.

- a) have not been
- b) had not been

2 I never \_\_\_ them when I lived in London.

- a) had met
- b) have met

3.1 came at 2 o'clock. He \_\_\_ the work by that time.

- a) had done



b) has done

4. I met her on Monday and \_\_\_ her since.

a) had not seen

b) have not seen

5. She said in a voice she never \_\_\_ about it before.

a) has heard

b) had heard

6. Yes, I know Jim. I \_\_\_ him for more than ten years.

a) have known

b) had known

7. She tried to concentrate. She \_\_\_ John since 1978. No, he could not have done it.

a) has known

b) had known

8. He \_\_\_ in a bank before he came to our office.

a) had worked

b) has worked

9. We \_\_\_. there since we were young.

a) have not been

b) had not been

10. Why \_\_\_ the window? It is very noisy in the street.

a) had you opened

b) have you opened

### Exercise 15.

*Open the brackets and use the required past tense.*

1. It was the poorest room he ever (see). 2. No sooner she (come) at the station than a fast London train (arrive). 3» I (finish) my work by afternoon and (sit) quietly in my armchair, thinking of the days that (pass) by, 4. The storm already (die) away, but very far off the thunder still (mutter). 5. I already (go) into the bed and (fall asleep) when my mother (knock) at the door and (ask) me to get up. 6. By the time the guests (come), she still (not be ready). 7. I (not listen), so I missed what she (say). 8. By 9 o'clock he (finish) work. He (go) outside. The rain (stop) but it (be) rather cool. 9. By the time I (come) the shop already (close), 10. Hardly we (leave) when our bicycle (break) down.

### Exercise 16.

*Complete the sentences with the verbs from the box using the Past Perfect Continuous Tense.*

consider	burn
drive	hope
quarrel	rain
practice	write
work	try

1. He \_\_\_ the car for many hours before he came to the crossroads, 2. The pianist \_\_\_ the passage hour after hour till he mastered it, 3, When I met her, her eyes were red. She and Mike again \_\_\_\_\_. 4, When I came, they \_\_\_ this question for more than an hour. 5. It was evening and he was tired because he \_\_\_ since dawn. 6. He \_\_\_ to get

her on the phone for 15 minutes before he heard her voice. 7. By 12 o'clock they \_\_\_\_\_ a composition for two hours. 8. The fire \_\_\_\_\_ for some time before a fire brigade came. 9. I \_\_\_\_\_ to meet her for ages when I bumped into her by chance. 10. When I left home, it was raining, and as it \_\_\_\_\_ since morning, the streets were muddy.

**Exercise 17.**

*Open the brackets and use the proper tense.*

1. When he (arrive), I (live) in London for a week. 2. We (read) while he (eat). 3. When Jack (phone) me, I (write) a letter, 4. When my friend (come), I (do) an exercise for an hour. 5. The library (close) by the time I (get) there. 6. I (drive) home when I (hear) the news on the radio. 7. They always (have) loud parties which (go on) till the early hours, 8. We (walk) for some hours before we (realize) that we (lose) our way. 9. No sooner I (complain) that I (not hear) from them for a long time than the letter (come). 10. The concert was a great success. When the pianist (finish) his part, the audience (applaud) the orchestra for some minutes.

**Exercise 18.**

*Here is the forecast of the life in the 21<sup>st</sup> century. Complete the sentences with the words from the box.*

forbid	start
be	use
live	have
elect	work
take over	replace

1. People \_\_\_\_\_ on the moon. 2. Children \_\_\_\_\_ school at the age of three. 3. Computers \_\_\_\_\_ teachers. 4. People \_\_\_\_\_ 4 hours a day. 5. Houses and factories \_\_\_\_\_ solar energy. 6.

Americans\_\_\_a woman president. 7. Robots \_\_\_most jobs. 8. There will be a law, which\_\_\_having more than two children. 9. Six weeks\_\_\_a normal annual holiday. 10, Great Britain\_\_\_a black Prime Minister.

### Exercise 19.

*Choose the right variant.*

1, He\_\_\_here till he\_\_\_everything.

- a) will stay, doesn't do
- b) will stay, does
- c) stays? will do
- d) stays, will not do

2. In case the weather\_\_\_good, they\_\_\_fishing.

- a) will be, will go
- b) is, go
- c) will be, go
- d) is, will go

3. Unless he\_\_\_, we\_\_\_to the theatre.

- a) doesn't come, won't go
- b) comes, won't go
- c) won't come, don't go
- d) doesn't come, don't go

4.1 can't decide if I\_\_\_you till I\_\_\_when they\_\_\_.

- a) will join, will know, will leave

- b) will join, know, will leave
- c) join, will know, leave
- d) join, will know, will leave

5. I \_\_\_ you the keys to the car as long as you \_\_\_ the speed.

- a) will give, won't exceed
- b) give, won't exceed
- c) will give, don't exceed
- d) give, don't exceed

6.1 don't know if they \_\_\_ new people. If they \_\_\_ I \_\_\_ you of it.

- a) will hire, will, will inform
- b) hire, do, inform
- c) hire, will, will inform
- d) will hire, do, will inform.

7.1 \_\_\_ anywhere till my son \_\_\_ all his exams.

- a) won't go, doesn't take
- b) don't go doesn't take
- c) won't go, takes
- d) won't go, will take

8. If she \_\_\_ and we \_\_\_ at home, ask her when she \_\_\_ the magazine.

- a) phones, are not, will bring
- b) will phone, will not be, will bring

- c) phones, will not be, brings
- d) will phone, will not be, brings

9.1 \_\_\_ the article when I \_\_\_ home and \_\_\_ you **up** when it \_\_\_ ready.

- a) will translate, will come, will ring, will be
- b) will translate, come, will ring, is
- c) will translate, will come, ring, will be
- d) translate, will come, ring, is

10. He \_\_\_ me the book providing I \_\_\_ it not later than Saturday.

- a) will give, will return
- b) give, return
- c) will give, return
- d) give, will return

### **Exercise 20.**

*Open the brackets and put the verbs into the Future Indefinite, the Future Perfect, the Present Indefinite or the Present Perfect Tense.*

1. By 8 o'clock they (have) dinner. 2. By the end of the week he (finish) the translation. 3. Before you (come) I (do) all the work. 4. She (look) through the article by 12 o'clock. 5. They (receive) our letter by Monday. 6. By the time we (get) to the forest the rain (stop), 7. I think he (answer) the letter by this time. 8. We (begin) to work after we (read) all the instructions, 9. We (not do) anything until he (take) necessary steps. 10. The committee (prepare) the plan by tomorrow. 11. I suppose when my letter (reach) you I already (return) from your voyage, 12. He (pass) an exam after he (learn) all the material. 13. I am afraid they (not discuss) all the questions by the time they (come). 14. We (not be able) to start the experiment before

we (obtain) the necessary data. 15. The secretary already (look) through all the papers before the boss (come). 16. My train (leave) by the time you (come) to the station.

### **Exercise 21.**

*Open the brackets and use the Future Perfect Continuous Tense.*

1. They already (rehearse) for an hour when we come. 2. I (work) in this company for 10 years next April. 3. By next year he (writing) the novel for three years. 4. The thieves are sure that they (drive) for 6 hours when the police discover the robbery in the morning. 5. They (study) for 3 hours when you come.

### **Exercise 22.**

*Find and correct the mistakes if any (pay attention to the use of tenses).*

1. After graduating from the institute I came to St. Petersburg. I am working here since then. 2. I have just left the house when you phoned me. 3. By the time I came to the country cottage my friends have already left. 4. When I came, my friend was sitting on the sofa and was reading a newspaper. 5. It has rained since morning and I am afraid, it won't stop by Saturday. 6. He will work at his new book during his holiday. 7. The woman who speaks with my sister is my neighbour who is living opposite us. 8. They were looking for the money since morning but they couldn't find it anywhere. 9. Yesterday when I came to see my friend he was having supper. He has just come home. 10. After he has finished the picture he will invite his friends to look at it.

### **Exercise 23.**

*Choose the right variant.*

1. When, Ann last?

I \_\_\_ her since she \_\_\_ to another city.

a) have you seen, haven't seen, has moved

b) did you see, didn't see, moved

c) did you see, haven't seen, moved

d) have you seen, didn't see, has moved

2. Our train\_\_\_at 8 o'clock. If you\_\_\_at 5, we. our things.

a) leaves, come, will pack

b) will leave, will come, will be packing

c) is leaving, will come, are packing

d) leaves, come, will be packing

3. They\_\_\_. to build a new McDonalds in several days and\_\_\_it by the end of the year.

a) will start, will finish

b) are starting, will have finished

c) start, will be finishing

d) start, are finishing

4. I\_\_\_the performance for twenty minutes when my friend\_\_\_at last. His car\_\_\_on his way to the theatre.

a) was watching, had come, had broken down

b) had been watching, came, had broken down

c) watched, came, broke down

d) have been watching, had come, has broken

5. Look, what he\_\_\_on the blackboard. He\_\_\_three mistakes.

a) is writing, has made



- b) has written, had made
- c) has been writing, is making
- d) writes, made

6. What \_\_\_ if the rain \_\_\_ by evening? It \_\_\_ since yesterday, I wonder when it \_\_\_.

- a) will we do, doesn't stop, is pouring, will stop
- b) are we doing, hasn't stopped, had been pouring, stops
- c) shall we have done, won't have stopped, was pouring, will be stopping
- d) shall we do, hasn't stopped, has been pouring, will stop

7. What \_\_\_ when I \_\_\_? - We. \_\_\_ the article which Mary \_\_\_ just ..... I \_\_\_ to read it for a long time.

- a) did you do, was coming in, were reading, has brought, have wanted
- b) were you doing, came in, were reading, had brought, had wanted
- c) had you been doing, came in, read, brought, had been wanting
- d) have you done, have come in, have read, has brought, wanted

8. It \_\_\_ dark, it's time for the children to go home. They \_\_\_ in the yard for the whole evening.

- a) got, play
- b) has got, are playing
- c) is getting, have been playing
- d) gets, played

9.1 haven't heard you come into the room. When \_\_\_? —

I \_\_\_ long ago. You \_\_\_ and I \_\_\_ to disturb you.

- a) did you come, came, were reading, was not wanting
- b) did you come, came, were reading, did not want
- c) have you come, have come, have been reading, don't want
- d) were you coming, was comings read, haven't wanted

10. I \_\_\_ till Father \_\_\_. He \_\_\_ his key and I will have to wait for him.

- a) won't be leaving, will come, had lost
- b) won't leave, will come, has lost
- c) won't leave, comes, has lost
- d) aren't leaving, comes, loses

#### **Exercise 24.**

*Open the brackets (choose Past Simple or Present Perfect).*

1. We (to travel) around Europe last year.
2. My father knows so much because he (to travel) a lot.
3. I (to see) Pete today.
4. She (to see) this film last Sunday.
5. Alex (to meet) his friend two hours ago.
6. I just (to meet) our teacher.
7. The children already (to decide) what to do with the books.
8. Yesterday they (to decide) to help their grandmother.
9. Helen speaks French so well because she (to live) in France.
10. She (to live) there last year.
11. The rain (to stop) and the sun is shining in the sky again.
12. The rain (to stop) half an hour ago.
13. Mary (to buy) a new hat.
14. I (to buy) a pair of gloves yesterday.
15. The wind (to blow) off the man's hat, and he cannot catch it.

#### **Exercise 25.**

*Present Past Continuous, Present Perfect, Past Simple.*

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. He (play) a lot of football this year.</li> </ol> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. plays</li> <li>b. was playing</li> <li>c. has played</li> </ul> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Tell me all about what (happen) at the meeting. I am all ears.</li> </ol> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. happened</li> <li>b. has happened</li> <li>c. has been happening</li> </ul> |
|---|---|

3. He (run) away from school three times when he was 14.

- a. ran
- b. has run
- c. has been running

4. How many cups of coffee you (drink) today?

- a. did you drink
- b. have you drunk
- c. have you been drinking

5. What you (drink) when you came home?

- a. did you drink
- b. have you drunk
- c. were you drinking

6. Your car is covered in mud. Where you (drive)?

- a. did you drive
- b. have you driven
- c. have you been driving

7. Our team just (lose) 8 games one after another.

- a. lost
- b. has lost
- c. have been losing

8. You (make) up your mind? What you (decide) to do?

- a. did you make/ have you decided
- b. have you made/ have you decided
- c. have you been making/did you decide

9. You (find) the place on the map yet?

- a. Have you found
- b. Did you find
- c. Have you been finding

10. I (not/hear) anything from him yet.

- a. didn't hear
- b. haven't heard
- c. haven't been hearing

### Exercise 26.

*Past Simple, Past Continuous or Past Perfect.*

1. I (to sit) in the armchair and (to think) of my coming trip across the North Sea when the door suddenly (to open) and an old friend of mine whom I (not to see) for a very long time (to enter) the room. 2. She (to come) to see us just at the time when we (to have) dinner. It (to be) the first time I (to see) her. 3. I (to see) him just as he (to leave) the hotel. 4. I (not to see) him before we (to meet) at the concert. 5. He (to leave) the house before I (to have) time to ask him anything. 6. He (to tell) me he (to learn) it from the newspaper. 7. He (to enter) the room, (to take) something from the desk and

(to go) out. 8. There (to be) two men in the room. One of them (to write) something while the other (to read) a newspaper. 9. He (not to tell) me that he (to receive) a telegram from her. 10. I (to ask) him if he (to know) where she (to live). I (to say) I (not to know) her address. 11. He (to ask) me if I (can) give him your address. 12. She (to say) that he (to give) her the wrong address. 13. I (to ask) him where he (to put) my letter. 14. He (to tell) us that they (to spend) all the money. 15. After spending several days in Paris he (to feel) lonely and (to want) to return home. 16. I (to think) he already (to go) home. 17. I (to find) the old man in the garden. He (to talk) to some children who (to stand) around listening to him. 18. He (to speak) a language we never (to hear) before.

### **Exercise 27.**

#### *Present Perfect or Present Perfect Continuous*

1. The war \_\_\_\_\_ (rage) for 9 months now.
2. You \_\_\_\_\_ (write) down his e-mail address?
3. How long you \_\_\_\_\_ (work) for this company?
4. I \_\_\_\_\_ (queue) for half an hour so far.
5. You \_\_\_\_\_ (be) to the supermarket?
6. I not \_\_\_\_\_ (buy) a new dress since Christmass.
7. I not \_\_\_\_\_ (hear) anything from him for ages.
8. I \_\_\_\_\_ (wait) for you.
9. We not \_\_\_\_\_ (have) such a snowy winter since my daughter was born.
10. A lot of things \_\_\_\_\_ (change) since you left.
11. It \_\_\_\_\_ (snow) since yesterday morning.
12. I \_\_\_\_\_ (try) to catch a taxi for an hour now.
13. You \_\_\_\_\_ (pass) your driving test yet?
14. You \_\_\_\_\_ (book) the plane tickets?
15. His plane \_\_\_\_\_ (land) yet?

### **Exercise 28.**

#### *Past Simple / Past Continuous / Past Perfect Continuous / Past Perfect*

1. I (talk) over the phone when they brought me the letter.  
A talked  
B had talked  
C had been talking  
D was talking
  
2. They (sit) in the room when the taxi arrived.  
A sat  
B had sat  
C had been sitting  
D were sitting
  
3. He quickly forgot everything he (learn) at school.  
A learnt  
B had learnt  
C had been learning  
D was learning
  
4. I visited Brazil in April.                      I (stay) at a nice hotel for a fortnight.  
A stayed  
B had stayed  
C had been staying  
D was staying
  
5. I (stay) at the hotel for a fortnight when I received your letter.  
A stayed  
B had stayed  
C had been staying  
D was staying

6. The musician (play) the piano for a whole hour when we came in.

A played

B had played

C had been playing

D was playing

7. Alice closed the magazine and rose from the sofa on which she (lie) for more than two hours.

A lay

B had lain

C had been lying

D was lying

8. A man (be) unconscious for a few minutes when an ambulance arrived.

A was

B had been

C had being

9. We (walk) along a forest road for two hours when we saw a house.

A walked

B had walked

C had been walking

D were walking

10. I (talk) over the phone for a whole hour when the porter knocked at the door.

A talked

B had talked

C had been talking

D was talking

*Supplement I.*

## Довідкові дані

## Неправильні дієслова англійської мови

VERB	PAST SIMPLE	PAST PARTICIPLE	TRANSLATION
arise [ə'raiz]	arose [ə'rouz]	arisen [ə'rizn]	виникати, поставати
be [bi:]	was [wɒz], were [wɜ:]	been [bi:n]	бути
bear [beə]	bore [bɔ:]	borne [bɔ:n]	нести, носити; родити
beat [bi:t]	beat [bi:t]	beaten ['bi:tn]	бити
become [bi'kʌm]	became [bi'keim]	become [bi'kʌm]	ставати, робитися
begin [bi'gin]	began [bi'gæn]	begun [bi'gʌn]	починати(ся)
bend [bend]	bent [bent]	bent [bent]	згинати(ся)
bet [bet]	bet [bet]	bet [bet]	битися об заклад, іти на парі
bind [baɪnd]	bound [baʊnd]	bound [baʊnd]	зв'язувати
bite [baɪt]	bit [bɪt]	bitten ['bɪtn]	кусати
bleed [bli:d]	bled [bled]	bled [bled]	кровоточити
blow [blou]	blew [blu:]	blown [bloun]	дути
break [breɪk]	broke [brɔ:k]	broken ['brɔ:kən]	(з)ламати
bring [brɪŋ]	brought [brɔ:t]	brought [brɔ:t]	приносити
broadcast ['brɔ:dkɑ:st]	broadcast ['brɔ:dkɑ:st]	broadcast ['brɔ:dkɑ:st]	передавати по радіо, транслявати
build [bɪld]	built [bɪlt]	built [bɪlt]	будувати
burn [bɜ:n]	burnt [bɜ:nt]	burnt [bɜ:nt]	палити; горіти

burst [bɜ:st]	burst [bɜ:st]	burst [bɜ:st]	розриватися; вибухати
buy [bai]	bought [bɔ:t]	bought [bɔ:t]	купувати
cast [kɑ:st]	cast [kɑ:st]	cast [kɑ:st]	кидати
catch [kætʃ]	caught [kɔ:t]	caught [kɔ:t]	ЛОВИТИ, (с)піймати
choose [tʃu:z]	chose [tʃəuz]	chosen ['tʃəuzən]	вибирати
come [kʌm]	came [keim]	come [kʌm]	приходити
cost [cɔst]	cost [cɔst]	cost [cɔst]	коштувати
creep [kri:p]	crept [krept]	crept [krept]	повзти
cut [kʌt]	cut [kʌt]	cut [kʌt]	різати
deal [di:l]	dealt [delt]	dealt [delt]	мати справу
do [du:]	did [did]	done [dʌn]	робити
draw [drɔ:]	drew [dru:]	drawn [drɔ:n]	тягти; малювати
dream [dri:m]	dreamt [dremt]	dreamt [dremt]	бачити уві сні; мріяти
drink [drɪŋk]	drank [dræŋk]	drunk [drʌŋk]	пити
drive [draɪv]	drove [drouv]	driven ['drɪvən]	гнати; їхати
eat [i:t]	ate [et]	eaten ['i:tn]	їсти
fall [fɔ:l]	fell [fel]	fallen ['fɔ:lən]	падати
feed [fi:d]	fed [fed]	fed [fed]	годувати
feel [fi:l]	felt [felt]	felt [felt]	почувати, відчувати
fight [fait]	fought [fɔ:t]	fought [fɔ:t]	битися, боротися
find [faɪnd]	found [faund]	found [faund]	знаходити
fit [fit]	fit [fit]	fit [fit]	підходити за розміром
fly [flai]	flew [flu:]	flown [floun]	літати
forbid [fə'bid]	forbade [fə'beɪd]	forbidden [fə'bidn]	забороняти



forget [fə'get]	forgot [fə'gɒt]	forgotten [fə'gɒtɪn]	забувати
forgive [fə'giv]	forgave [fə'geiv]	forgiven [fə'givən]	вибачати, прощати
freeze [fri:z]	froze [frouz]	frozen ['frouzən]	заморожувати; замерзати
get [ get ]	got [gɒt]	got [gɒt]	діставати, одержувати
give [giv]	gave [geiv]	given [givən]	давати
go [gou]	went [went]	gone [gɒn]	іти
grow [grou]	grew [gru:]	grown [groun]	рости
hang [hæŋ]	hung [hʌŋ]	hung [hʌŋ]	висіти; вішати
have [hæv]	had [hæd]	had [hæd]	мати
hear [hiə]	heard [hɜ:d]	heard [hɜ:d]	чути
hide [haid]	hid [hid]	hidden ['hidn]	ховати(ся)
hit [hit]	hit [hit]	hit [hit]	ударяти; влучати
hold [hould]	held [held]	held [held]	тримати
hurt [hɜ:t]	hurt [hɜ:t]	hurt [hɜ:t]	завдати шкоди, болю
keep [ki:p]	kept [kept]	kept [kept]	тримати; зберігати
kneel [ni:l]	knelt [nelt]	knelt [nelt]	стояти на колінах
know [nou]	knew [nju:]	known [noun]	знати
lay [lei]	laid [leid]	laid [leid]	класти
lead [li:d]	led [led]	led [led]	вести
lean [li:n]	leant [lent]	leant [lent]	нахилятися; спиратися
learn [lɜ:n]	learnt [lɜ:nt]	learnt [lɜ:nt]	вчити
leave [li:v]	left [left]	left [left]	залишати
lend [lend]	lent [lent]	lent [lent]	позичати (комусь)

let [let]	let [let]	let [let]	пускати; дозволяти
lie [lai]	lay [lei]	lain [lein]	лежати
light [lait]	lit [lit]	lit [lit]	освітлювати
lose [lu:z]	lost [lɒst]	lost [lɒst]	втрачати, губити
make [meik]	made [meid]	made [meid]	робити
mean [mi:n]	meant [ment]	meant [ment]	означати; мати намір
meet [mi:t]	met [met]	met [met]	зустрічати
mistake [mi'steik]	mistook [mi'stuk]	mistaken [mi'steikən]	помилятися
pay [pei]	paid [peid]	paid [peid]	платити
put [put]	put [put]	put [put]	класти, ставити
read [ri:d]	read [red]	read [red]	читати
ride [raid]	rode [roud]	ridden ['ridn]	їздити верхи
ring [riŋ]	rang [ræŋ]	rung [rʌŋ]	дзвонити
rise [raiz]	rose [rouz]	risen ['rizən]	вставати, підніматися
run [rʌn]	ran [ræn]	run [rʌn]	бігти
say [sei]	said [sed]	said [sed]	говорити, сказати
see [si:]	saw [sɔ:]	seen [si:n]	бачити
seek [si:k]	sought [sɔ:t]	sought [sɔ:t]	шукати
sell [sel]	sold [sould]	sold [sould]	продавати
send [send]	sent [sent]	sent [sent]	посилати
set [set]	set [set]	set [set]	ставити
sew [sou]	sewed [soud]	sewn [soun]	шити
shake [ʃeik]	shook [ʃuk]	shaken ['ʃeikən]	трясти
shine [ʃain]	shone [ʃɒn]	shone [ʃɒn]	світити, сяяти

shoot [ʃu:t]	shot [ʃɒt]	shot [ʃɒt]	стріляти; проростати
show [ʃəʊ]	showed [ʃəʊd]	shown [ʃəʊn]	показувати
shrink [frɪŋk]	shrank [fræŋk]	shrunk [frʌŋk]	скорочувати(ся); зсідатися
shut [ʃʌt]	shut [ʃʌt]	shut [ʃʌt]	закривати
sing [sɪŋ]	sang [sæŋ]	sung [sʌŋ]	співати
sink [sɪŋk]	sank [sæŋk]	sunk [sʌŋk]	тонути; опускатися
sit [sɪt]	sat [sæt]	sat [sæt]	сидіти
sleep [sli:p]	slept [slept]	slept [slept]	спати
slide [slaid]	slid [slid]	slid [slid]	ковзати
smell [smel]	smelt [smelt]	smelt [smelt]	пахнути; нюхати
sow [sou]	sowed [soud]	sown [soun]	сіяти
speak [spi:k]	spoke [spouk]	spoken ['spoukən]	говорити
speed [spi:d]	ped [sped]	ped [sped]	прискорювати; поспішати
spell [spel]	spelt [spelt]	spelt [spelt]	писати або вимовляти по буквах
spend [spend]	spent [spent]	spent [spent]	витрачати
spill [spil]	spilt [spilt]	spilt [spilt]	розливати
split [split]	split [split]	split [split]	розщеплювати(ся)
spoil [spɔɪl]	spoiled, spoilt [spɔɪlt]	spoiled, spoilt [spɔɪlt]	псувати
spread [spred]	spread [spred]	spread [spred]	поширювати(ся)
spring [sprɪŋ]	sprang [spræŋ]	sprung [sprʌŋ]	стрибати; виникати
stand [stænd]	stood [stud]	stood [stud]	стояти

steal [sti:l]	stole [stoul]	stolen ['stoulən]	красти
stick [stik]	stuck [stʌk]	stuck [stʌk]	встромляти; приклеювати
sting [stiŋ]	stung [stʌŋ]	stung [stʌŋ]	жалити
strike [straik]	struck [strʌk]	struck [strʌk]	бити; вдаряти(ся)
sweep [swi:p]	swept [swept]	swept [swept]	мести, підмітати
swell [swel]	swelled [sweld]	swollen ['swoulən]	надуватися; пухнути
swim [swim]	swam [swæm]	swum [swʌm]	плавати
swing [swiŋ]	swung [swʌŋ]	swung [swʌŋ]	гойдати(ся)
take [teik]	took [tuk]	taken ['teikən]	брати, взяти
teach [ti:tʃ]	taught [tɔ:t]	taught [tɔ:t]	вчити, навчати
tear [teə]	tore [tɔ:]	torn [tɔ:n]	рвати
tell [tel]	told [tould]	told [tould]	розповідати; говорити
think [θiŋk]	thought [θɔ:t]	thought [θɔ:t]	думати
throw [θrəu]	threw [θru:]	thrown [θrəun]	кидати
understand [ʌndə'stænd]	understood [ʌndə'stʊd]	understood [ʌndə'stʊd]	розуміти
wake [weik]	woke [wouk]	woken ['woukən]	прокидатися; будити
wear [weə]	wore [wɔ:]	worn [wɔ:n]	носити (одяг)
weep [wi:p]	wept [wept]	wept [wept]	плакати
win [win]	won [wʌn]	won [wʌn]	вигравати
wind [waɪnd]	wound [waʊnd]	wound [waʊnd]	намотувати(ся); заводити (механізм)
write [raɪt]	wrote [raʊt]	written ['rɪtn]	писати

## ENGLISH TENSES ACTIVE

	Present	Past	Future
Simple	<p>Допоміжне дієслово:</p> <p>do / does</p> <p>Закінчення: -, -s</p> <p>Формула: V (+s)</p> <p>+ I work</p> <p>+ He writes</p> <p>– I do not work</p> <p>– He does not write</p> <p>? Do I work?</p> <p>? Does he write?</p>	<p>Допоміжне дієслово:</p> <p>did</p> <p>Закінчення: -ed, –</p> <p>Формула: V2</p> <p>+ I worked</p> <p>+ He wrote</p> <p>– I did not work</p> <p>– He did not write</p> <p>? Did I work?</p> <p>? Did he write?</p>	<p>Допоміжне дієслово:</p> <p>will / shall</p> <p>Закінчення: –</p> <p>Формула: will/shall + V</p> <p>+ I will work</p> <p>+ He will write</p> <p>– I won't work</p> <p>– He won't write</p> <p>? Will I work?</p> <p>? Will I write?</p>
Continuous	<p>Допоміжне дієслово:</p> <p>be (is / am / are)</p> <p>Закінчення: -ing</p> <p>Формула: am/is/are + Ving</p> <p>+ I am working</p> <p>+ He is writing</p> <p>– I am not working</p> <p>– He is not writing</p> <p>? Am I working?</p> <p>? Is he writing?</p>	<p>Допоміжне дієслово:</p> <p>was / were</p> <p>Закінчення: -ing</p> <p>Формула: was/were + Ving</p> <p>+ I was working</p> <p>+ He was writing</p> <p>– I was not working</p> <p>– He was not writing</p> <p>? Was I working?</p> <p>? Was he writing?</p>	<p>Допоміжне дієслово:</p> <p>will be / shall be</p> <p>Закінчення: -ing</p> <p>Формула: will/shall + be + Ving</p> <p>+ I will be working</p> <p>+ He will be writing</p> <p>– I won't be working</p> <p>– He won't be writing</p> <p>? Will I be working?</p> <p>? Will he be writing?</p>
Perfect	<p>Допоміжне дієслово:</p> <p>have / has</p> <p>Закінчення: -ed</p>	<p>Допоміжне дієслово:</p> <p>had</p> <p>Закінчення: -ed</p> <p>Формула: had + V3</p>	<p>Допоміжне дієслово:</p> <p>will have / shall have</p> <p>Закінчення: -ed</p>

	<p>Формула: have/has + V3</p> <p>+ I have worked + He has written</p> <p>– I have not worked – He has not written</p> <p>? Have I worked? ? Has he written?</p>	<p>+ I had worked + He had written</p> <p>– I had not worked – He had not written</p> <p>? Had I worked? ? Had he written?</p>	<p>Формула: will/shall + have V3</p> <p>+ I will have worked + He will have written</p> <p>– I won't have worked – He won't have written</p> <p>? Will I have worked? ? Will he have written?</p>
<p>Perfect Continuous</p>	<p>Допоміжне дієслово:</p> <p>have been / has been</p> <p>Закінчення: -ing</p> <p>Формула: have/has + been + Ving</p> <p>+ I have been working + He has been writing</p> <p>– I have not been working – He has not been writing</p> <p>? Have I been working? ? Has he been writing?</p>	<p>Допоміжне дієслово:</p> <p>had been</p> <p>Закінчення: -ing</p> <p>Формула: had been + Ving</p> <p>+ I had been working + He had been writing</p> <p>– I had not been working – He had not been writing</p> <p>? Had I been working? ? Had he been writing?</p>	<p>Допоміжне дієслово:</p> <p>will have been / shall have been</p> <p>Закінчення: -ing</p> <p>Формула: will/shall + have been + Ving</p> <p>+ I will have been working + He will have been writing</p> <p>– I won't have been working – He won't have been writing</p> <p>? Will I have been working? ? Will he have been writing?</p>

**СПИСОК ДЖЕРЕЛ**

1. Бахтадзе Е.А., Симанович О.С., Лещева Л.М. [и др.]; под общ. ред. Лещевой Л.М. Практическая грамматика английского языка для среднего и продвинутого уровней обучения: учебно-методическое пособие для студентов гуманитарных специальностей вузов: в 3 ч. Ч.3.– Минск. Акад. упр. при Президенте Респ. Беларусь, 2006. 282 с.
2. Возна М. О., Гапонів А. Б., Акулова О. О., Хоменко Н. С., Гуль В.С. Англійська мова для перекладачів і філологів. I-IV курс: підручник для студентів та викладачів вищих навчальних закладів: Вінниця: Нова Книга, 2004. 480 с.
3. Голицынский Ю.Б. Грамматика: сборник упражнений. Спб.: Каро, 1999. 475 с.
4. Мулик К.О., Алексеєва О. Б. Практикум з усного та писемного мовлення: навч. посібник для студентів педагогічних університетів: Одеса: Букаєв Вадим Вікторович, 2015. 98 с.
5. Черноватий Л.М., Карабан В.І., Набокова І.Ю. Практична граматики англійської мови з вправами. Том 2.: навч. посіб. Вінниця: Нова книга, 2005. 288 с.
6. Antonyuk N., Krasnolutsky K. English Speaking Countries and Ukraine. Вінниця, 2004. 270 с.
7. Biber D., Conrad S., Leech G. Longman Student Grammar of Spoken and Written English. Pearson Education Limited, 2006.
8. Cullen P. Cambridge Vocabulary for IELTS. Cambridge University Press, 2010.

1. <http://subject.com.ua/english/topic1/index.html>
2. <http://www.alleng.ru/engl-top/369.htm>
3. [www.languageguide.org](http://www.languageguide.org)
4. [www.langed.com](http://www.langed.com)
5. [www.study-english.info](http://www.study-english.info)
6. <http://www.native-english.ru/>
7. <http://www.englishood.com/>
8. <http://www.5english.com/>
9. <http://www.digitalpublishing.de/english/>
10. <http://www.testmagic.com/>